









الكتاب يحتوى على أسئله كتاب الوزارة. الكتاب مطابق الأحدث مواصفات وزارية. الكتاب يحتوى على عرض جديد لل grammar وتدربيات أكثر للطالب.

Theme (3) I discover myself

Unit 7: Amazing artifacts 4

Unit 8: Toys and games 43

Unit 9: What's the story? 76

Review 3 109

Theme (4) Myself and others

Unit 10: Free as a bird 112
Unit 11: How can I help? 149
Unit 12: Fiction reader: Atemu and Amethyst 189
Review 4 205
Tape scripts 207

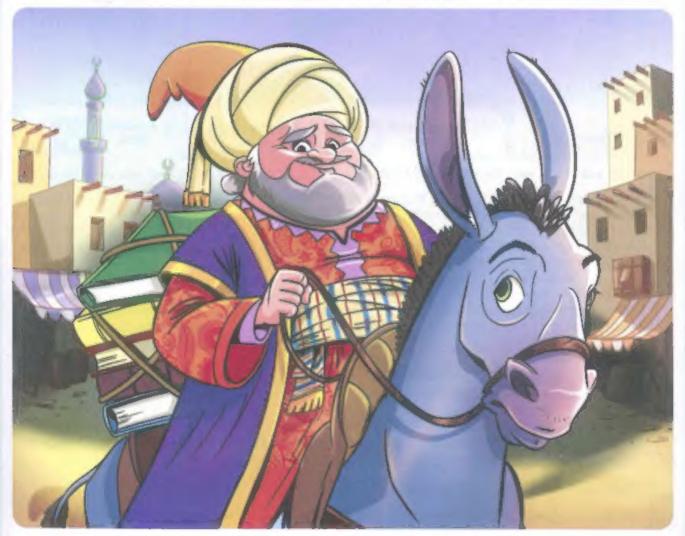


Theme انا أكتشف نفست









Unit 7

Amazing artifacts قطع أثرية مذهلة



Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises



Al-Azhar



Answers 100%



- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
- · listen and read about artifacts in the Museum of Ancient History.
- listen, read, research, and write about important ancient artifacts.
- · use the past simple.
- · do a quiz about Ancient Egyption artifacts.
- · read about animals in Ancient Egypt.
- · use prepositions of place.
- say words with the sound /er/.
- write a fact file about a metal or material in Ancient Egypt.
- research and write display boards for artifacts from Ancient Egypt.

- بنوایة هذه الوحدة، سکون التلمیذ قادرًا علی أن:
 - يستمع ويقرأ عن القطع الأرية السومودة في متحاب التاريخ القنيس،
 - -يستمع، يقرأه يبحث، ويكتب عن الأثار القعيمة الهامة.
 - يستخدم زمن الباشي البسيط.
 - ياوح بصل اختبار حول آثار مصر القديمة.
 - يقرأ من الحيولتات في عصر اللديدات
 - يساخده حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان
 - 1817 Open Class (181) -
 - يكتب مثان حفائق حول معدن أو مادة في عصر القديماء
 - بيحث ويقوم بكثابة لوحات عرض عن الثائر المصرية القديمات

Did you know?

 An artifact is an object that was made by humans in the past. The *Khufu solar ship is an artifact from Ancient Egypt. It is the world's oldest intact ship.

I can find it out!

There are many other Ancient Egyptian *artifacts that are wildly famous, such as *Tutankhamun's mask, *the Rosetta Stone that has ancient *hieroglyphic scripts written on it, and *the Mummy of Ramses II.

* Khufu solar ship	سقينة خوفو	* artifacts	آثار قديمة	* Tutankhamun's mask	قناع ثوت عنج أمون
* the Rosetta Stone	حجر رشيد	* hieroglyphic scripts	تصوص هيروغليفية	*the Mummy of Romses II	موسياه رمسيس الثاني



Lesson 1 Study A visit to the museum زیارة إلی المتحف





Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



gold ذهب



glass زجاج



granite جراثيت



clay طين / صلصال

Extra vocabulary

the Museum of Ancient History	متحف التاريخ القديم	guide	مرشد
artifacts	أثار/ تحف فنية	Great!	عظيمرا
climate	مناخ	certain materials	مواد محددة معينة
durable (adj.)	مثين/ صلب	Tutankhamun's tomb	مقبرة توت عنخ أمون
fascinating (adj.)	خلابة / ساحرة	pots	أوانٍ فخارية
stone	حجر	valuable (adj.)	قيم

تعريف الأفعال Conjugation of verbs

		The second second			
R	egular verbs			أفعال منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present	1	Past
damage	يدمر	damaged	help	عداعد	helped
preserve	يحفظ	preserved	last	يدوم	lasted
like	يحب	liked	use	يستخدم	used
cover	يقطى	covered	enjoy	يستمتع ب	enjoyed
Im	regular verbs			أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
know	يعلم	knew	build	يبق	built
find	باخت	found	make	يصنع	made
hear	- Janj	heard	keep	يحتفظ ب	kept

Expressions and Phrases

welcome to + place	أَهْلًا بِكُمْ فِي	excited to learn more abou	متحمس لتعلم المزيد عن 1
first of all	ف البداية (قبل كل شيء)	last a long time .	يدوم لقترة طويلة
that's why	لهذا السب	last forever	يدوم إلى الأبد
keep (something) in goo	d condition ييقى (شيئًا ما) بحالة جيدة	I am happy about that!	أنا سعيد من أجل ذلك!

جمل هامة | Important sentences

- We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.
 - نحن متحمسون لمعرفة المزيد عن القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة.
- We have a hot, dry climate that helps preserve the ancient artifacts.
 - لدينا مناخ حار وجاف يساعد في الحفاظ على القطع الأثرية القديمة.
- Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone.
 - قام المصريون القدماء بيناء الأهرامات بالجرائيت، وهو حجر صلب ومتين للغاية.
- Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable.

· كان المصريون القدماء يحبون استخدام الذهب لأنه فيم.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- (Glass Gold Clay Granite) is a very valuable metal.
- 2 Ancient Egyptians made pots from (gold cloth clay stone) that they found near the river.
- 3 (Cloth Granite Clay Glass) is a very durable stone.
- 4 Cloth, clay, and glass are (museums stones artifacts materials) we can use to make different things.
- 5 We keep the (granite stone clay artifacts) at the museum because they're valuable.
- 6 The (Artifact Museum Material Stone) of Ancient History is big and amazing.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Mr Tarek

Good morning and welcome to the Museum of Ancient History. My name is Mr Tarek and I am your guide today.

صباح الخير ومرحبا بكم في متحف التاريخ القديم، اسمى أستاذ طارق وأنا مرشدكم اليوم.

Good morning, Mr Tarek. I'm Tamer and this is my sister Tamara. We're students at Egyptian Eagle Primary School, and these are our parents.

صباح الخيس، أستاذ طارق، أنا نامر وهذه أختى تمارا، تحن طلاب في مدرسة «التسر المصريـة» الابتدائيـة، وهـؤلاء والدائـا.





Tamara

We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.

نحن متحمسون لمعرفة المزيد عن القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة.

Great! What would you like to know?

عظيم ا ما الذي تودون معرفته؟





amara

Well, first of all, why do we have so many artifacts?

حسنًا، في البداية، (قبل كل شيء) لماذا لدينا الكثير من القطع الأثرية؟

That's an interesting question. One reason is the climate. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to preserve them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone.

هذا سؤال مثير للاهتمام، أحد أسباب ذلك هو العناخ، لدينا مناخ حار وجاف هنا في مصر، لذلك لا تتضرر الفطح الأثرية من الطفس البارد والرطب، وهذا يساعد في الحفاظ عليها، عرف المصربون القدماء أن مواد محددة يمكن أن تدوم لفترة طويلة، لهذا السبب بنوا الأهرامات بالجرائيت، وهو حجر متين وصلب تلغاية.





Tamer

That's fascinating! What other materials did they use?

هذا رائعا ما هي المواد الأخرى التي استخدموها؟

They used a lot of glass, which lasts forever. They also used clay, which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots.

استخدموا الكثير من الرجاج الذي يدوم إلى الأبد. كما استخدموا الطبن الذي وجدوه بالقرب من نهر التيل،

لصنع الأواني.





Tamer

I also heard they used a lot of gold in Tutankhamun's tomb.

سمعت أيضًا أنهم استخدموا الكثير من الذهب في مقيرة دوت عنخ آمون.

Yes, the Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable, but it is also very durable. When they covered artifacts in gold, they kept them in good condition.

تعلم ، كان المصريون القدماء يحيون استخدام الذهب لأنه قيم ، ولكنه أيضًا منين للغاية وعندما غطوا القطع الأثرية بالذهب، أيقوها بحالة جيدة.





Tamer

I'm happy about that! It's exciting to enjoy the things they made.

أنا سعيد بذلك! من المثير الاستمناع بالأشياء التي صنعوها.

Check point

1 Why are Tamer and Tamara at the museum?



2 What did the Ancient Egyptians use to make pots?



Lesson 1



Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

0	4	Listen and cir	cle the correct a	nswer from a, b, o جابة الصحيحة:	, or d: استمع وضع دائرة حول الإم
Ĩ	1		o. tombs — c. artifo	in Egypt.	
ı	2				
1	6		gypt is		/ / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /
Q)	4		_	-	ny – d. cool and snowy)
1	2			to build th	e ryramius.
1	11		anite — c. clay — d		
1	· ·	_	-	e ir's	
1		(a. rare – b. exp	ensive — c. valuab	nie – a. sning)	
Ø	CI	hoose the corre	ct answer from a	a, b, c, or d:	اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:
ĩ	-	Granite is a	ma	terial. It can last fo	rever.
1			b) weak		d) small
1	2	Don't touch the	eh-balan-halba-bacha-bacha-bacha-bacha-bac	. They are very vo	luable.
1				c) condition	
1	3	A hot, dry clima	ate helps	the artifac	cts for a long time.
			b) learn		d) like
(a)	4	Stone and gold	can	for a long tim	e.
T		a) help	b) last	c) learn	d) build
1	5	A: What were the	he pots made from	n? B: They were m	ade from
1		a) glass	b) clay	c) gold	d) stone
П	6	When you cover	r artifacts in gold,	you keep them in g	good
1				c) condition	
1	7			of	
١.		a) stone	b) Pyramid	c) School	d) Museum
6	R	ead and comple	ete the text with	the words in the	box:
C				ر الكلمات المساعدة:	4 اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام
ı		mu	seum — materials —	granite - valuable -	- clay
ı	Eg	yptian artifacts	are amazing beca	use they lasted fo	r a long time. People in
L	Ar	ncient Egypt used	certain(1)	that were hard	and durable. They used
0		(2) to buil	d the Pyramids, TI	hey also used glass	, which could last forever.
	Th	ney used(3)	which is found	near the river to mo	ke pots. Ancient Egyptians
		-		and(4)	331

Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

People say that there is a lot of gold in Tutankhamun's tomb. It's true! Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable, but it's also durable. When they covered their artifacts with gold, they kept them in good condition. Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they used granite to build the Pyramids because it's a very hard and durable stone. They used a lot of glass, which lasts forever. They also used clay which is found close to the River Nile, to make their pots.

Choose the co	prrect answ	er from a	a, b, c,	or d:
---------------	-------------	-----------	----------	-------

The general idea of the text is about in Ancient Ed	I	in Ancient I		about	IS	text	the	of	idea	general	lhe	I
---	---	--------------	--	-------	----	------	-----	----	------	---------	-----	---

- a) food b) artifacts
- c) tombs

d) homes

- 2 were built with granite.
 - b) The Pyramids
- c) Tutankhamun's tomb d) Artifacts
- 3 The underlined word "valuable" means
 - a) cheep
- b) precious
- c) weak

d) small

Answer the following questions:

- Why did the Ancient Egyptians like to use gold?
- 5 Where could the Ancient Egyptians find clay?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جملًا:



- 1 do Why have we artifacts many?
- 2 excited They're about to learn Egypt Ancient.
- 4 in Egypt We have climate a hot, dry.
- 5 built Ancient with the Pyramids granite Egyptians.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأثي:



Mr tarek is our guide today









They loved animals

لقد أحبوا الحيوانات



tisten point and so,

استمع، أشر ومَل:

Main Vocabulary



rat جرد



monkey



baboon قرد الرباح (البابون)



crocodile تمساح



hippo



falcon صف



طائر أبو منجل



nake ثعبان

Extra vocabulary

pests حيوانات أليا	القات	f
lions حبوب	اسود	d
wisdi حاصه	حكمة om	S
after بمقردها	الحياة الأخرى	c
tomb تماثيل	مقابر	P
tricks سلاحف بحر	5 &	le
hikin أالحامعة	البتره على الأقدام g	n
	lions حنوب wisd حاصه after تماثيل tomb	السود اions حدوب اions حدوب حكمة الأخرى wisdom حاصه الحياة الأخرى afterlife تماثيل مقابر معادد حدع انتداد انتداد المحدد حدع انتداد المحدد الحداد المحدد الم

formers	مزارعون
dangerous (adj.)	حطير
Saqqara	مشره
common (adj.)	شائح
popular (adj.)	مشهور
local (adj.)	محلئ
mice	فثران

	Regular verbs		أفعيال منتظمية		
Present		Past	Present		Past
adore	يعشق/ يحب بشده	adored	love	پحب	loved
believe	يعتقد	believed	clean	ينظف	cleaned
produce	ينتج	produced	need	يحتاج	needed
kill	يقتل	killed	represent	يمثل	represented
mummify	שכימו	muminified	include	ىشمل	included

Expressions and Phrases

look after them	دوسي دومه	keep them safe	سقبهم امس
keep the house free of	ينقى لمارل جانيا من	difficult to look after	من الصعب الإعتباء بهم

Definitions

0.61111			
€		seeds from plants used to make flour and brea	ad
grain	حبوب	الدقيق والخبز	بذور من النباتات تستخدم في صنع
adored	عشق	loved something very much	أحب شئًا إن حد كبر
wisdom	حكمه	using your knowledge to make good decisions	
			استخدام معرفتك لاتخاذ قرارات جي
mummify	المصط	to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a ver اعليه لفترة طويلة جدًّا	y long time
statue	بمثال	an object made of stone or another material to	look like
Sidide	نشان	ى لىدو مثل شحص أو حيوان person or animal	شيء مصنوع من الحجر أو مادة أحر

Vocabulary Check

- We use a comma (,) when we speak about more than one thing ستخدم الفاصلة عند التحدث عن أكثر من شي واحد. Some people kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions.

Important sentences

- Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets
 - كان المصريون القدماء بحبون الحبوانات ويحتفظون بالعديد منها كحيوانات ألبِمة.

Ancient Egyptians believed that cars can look after them

- اعتقد المصريون القدماء أن القطط بمكنها الاعتناء بهم.
- Ancient Egyptians kept many animals, like crocodiles, lions, and hippos
 - احتفظ المصريون القدماء بالعديد من الحيوانات مثل التماسيح والأسود وفرس البهر.
- Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom in Ancient Egypt.
 - أحب المصريون القدماء الطيور أيضًا، خاصة الصقور وطائر أبو منحل الذي بمثل الحكمة في سصر القديمة.



1. What was the Ancient Egyptians' favorite animal?

ماذا كان الحيوان الأليف المفضل لدى القدماء المصريين؟

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly "adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves "and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important "for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The mice didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!







- (1)
- أنفسهم (2)
- نام (3)

2. What other animals did the Ancient Egyptians keep?

ما الحيوانات الأخرب التب احتفظ بها القدماء المصريون؟

As well as " cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after. They weren't popular pets!

الرصافة إلى القطيط، احتفظ العديد من الناس بالقرود وقرود الرياح (البانون)، حتى إن تعلق الناس المعطوا بالثماسيح وقارين النهار والأسود، التي كانت خطرة ويصعب الاعتناء بها، لم تكن حيوادات المدة شعبة



(4)

بالإصافة إلى

3. Did the Ancient Egyptians keep birds as pets as well?

هل احتفظ المصريون القدماء بالطيور كحيوانات أليفة أيضًا؟

Yes, they did. The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom. There are thousands of mummified ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life. It is therefore to they were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore common to find mummified. Pets and statues of animals in the tombs.

تعمر، لقد فعنوا ذلك، كان المصريون القدماء يحبون الطيور أيضًا، وخاصة الصقور وكذلك طيور أبو منجل التي تُمثل الحكمة، يوجد الآلاف من المومياوات المحتطة لطيور أبو منجل الى سفارة وحدها، كل هذه الحيوانات الأليمة لم تكن مهمة فقط للحياة النومية لمصريس القدماء كانوا أنضًا مهمين في الحياة الأخرة، لذلك من الشائع العثور على مومناوات حيوانات أليفة وتمائيل حيوانات في المقايد.



()
1/
- / /

(5)	البومية	الحياة

لدىك (6)

4. What animals are popular pets in Egypt today?

ما الحيوانات الأنيفة الأخرى المشهورة في مصر الآن؟

Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt. Other animals that people keep today include, turtles, fish, and birds, which are of course. much smaller and easier to look after than baboons and crocodiles.



الطبع (8) اصغر وأسهل (9)

- I Why were cats so popular in Ancient Egypt?
 - What is the bird that represented wisdom in Ancient Egypt?



زمن الماضي البسيط The Past Simple Tense

We use the past simple tense to express an action that happened and ended in the past at a certain time.

تستخدم رمن الماضي النسيط للتغيير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي في وقت معين.

يتكون الفعل في الماضي بإضافه (ed /d/led):

1. Regular Verbs

أفعران مسطمة

معظم الأفعال يصاف لها (ed). talk → talked

الأقعال المنهية د (٢) يصاف لها (d): adore - adored الأقعال المنبهية بـ (٧) قبلها حرف ساكن بحقف الـ (٧) ويصاف إليها الـ (١ed). mummifud --> mummified الأفعال المنتهية يحرف مسبوق بـ (الأفعال المنتهية يحرف مساكل بضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن.

drop -> dropped

Ancient Egyptians loved animals.

2. Irregular Verbs

أفعال عير منتظمة

الأقعال غير المنتظمة لا تتبع قاعدة عند تحويلها للماضي البسيط وتحفظ كما هي، على سبيل المثال:

Present	Past	Present	Past
be (am - is - are)	was / were	keep	kept
come	came	teach	taught
become	became	grow	grew
go	went	have	had
do	did		

Ancient Egyptians kept monkeys and baboons.



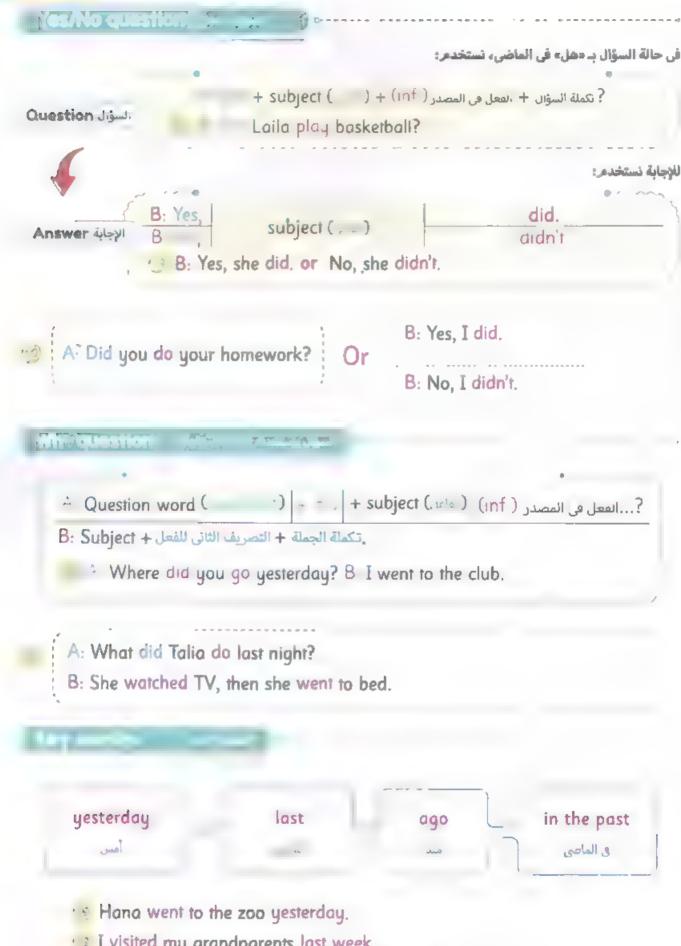
Sama traveled to London last year.

في حالة النفي نستخدم:

. كملة الحملة +الفعل في المصدر (Subject (الفاعل) + didn t + (nf

People in the past didn't have cars

I didn't go to the beach last summer.



- Hossam and Ali met each other an hour ago.
- 18 🎒 We lived in a village in the past.

فعل «يكون» فم زمن الماضم البسيط wipda فعل «يكون» فم أمن الماضم

Affirmative Forms

I/ He/ She/ It/

تكملة الجملة + WOS

Wel They/ You/ فاعل جمع

نكملة الجملة + were

- Habiba was abroad last week.
- Cats were important pets in Ancient Egypt.

I/ He

She/ It/ was not (wasn't) + نكملة الجمئة فاعل مفرد

- There wasn't a statue in the temple.



- They weren't at school yesterday.

السؤال :Question

Was I/ he/ she/ it/ عند ?

Were we/ they/ you/?

Answer: الإجابة

Yes, subject (lelid)

was/were.

Was Hossam at the museum yesterday?

Amal No, he wasn't

Were there a lot of artifacts in the museum?

Omar Yes, there were

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I (go goes going went) to Luxor on my vocation last week
- 2 Heba (isn't wasn't didn't aren't) at school yesterday.
- 3 Where (are were did do) you two hours ago?
- 4 The ibis (represented representing represents represent) wisdom in Ancient Egypt
- 5 (Do Does Doing Did) they arrive late yesterday?
- 6 Cars (are do were was) loud in the past.
- 7 (Was Are Is- Were) there any kids in the playground yesterday?
- 8 We (don't doesn't didn't weren't) visit Grandpa last vacation

Lesson 2



- Remembering • Understanding Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

Cho	ose the corre	ct answer from a,	b, c, or d:	10 اختر الإحانة الصحيحة:
Α	ncient Equption	ns believed that	can	look after them.
	a) baboons	b) hippos	c) cats	d) snakes
F	armers in Ancie	ent Fount produced	a lot of	
	a) pets	b) grain	c) gold	d) iron
T	he	is a bird that	represented wisdo	om in Ancient Egypt.
	a) flacon	b) chicken	c) ibis	d) parrot
4 S	alwa	cats. She le	oves them very m	uch.
	a) kills	b) hates	c) adores	d) represents angerous to look after.
S	ome people ke	pt as	pets. They were d	angerous to look after.
	a) lions	b) cats	c) fish	d) birds
		there a lot of mur		
		b) Was		d) Were
		travel last month		
	a) don't	b) didn't	c) doesn't	d) won't
				he museum yesterday.
	a) needs	b) needing a wonderful	c) needed	d) need
	a) met	b) meets	c) meeting	d) meet
10 [hey didn't	b) feed	nimals yesterday.	D. c. I
	a) fed	b) teed	c) feeding	d) feeds
Rea	d and comple	te the text with th	ne words in the b	ox:
				4 اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدا
	f	alcons — lions — easie	er — afterlife — tomb	os
Anci	ent Equotions 1	oved animals and l	kept them as pets	They kept animals, like
				ch were difficult to look
				e ibis, which represented
	-			n the Ancient Egyptians
		3 2 1	-	. That's why there are
_		pets in Ancient		,
Put	the words in	the correct order	to make sentenc	es:
			صحيح لتكون جملًا:	6 🗎 ضع الكلمات في ترتيبها ال
k	ept - Ancient -	- animals — many —	Egyptians – as pe	ets.

2 came - They - early - home - night - last.

there - Were - in the - mummified - birds - museum? 4 in the — There — wasn't — traffic — past — any. did — you — Where — up — grow? 6 represented - ibis - The - wisdom - in Ancient - Egypt.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس: The Ancient Egyptians (love) their pets. like cats when we were young. We (not) Omar didn't (troveled) to Paris last vacation. 4 The tombs (be) full of golden artifacts. 5 (Be) there snakes in Ancient Egypt? me English when I was in the third grade. Mrs Hoda (teach) I (go) to the Grand Museum and saw many mummies. (Do) the kids arrive in time yesterday?

They (teach). their monkeys different tricks to solve the problem in our last meeting They (not try)

Punctuate the following:

صع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

Today, pets are still popular in egypt

Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 50 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الأثبة:

> "Cats in Ancient Egypt" keep them safe - afterlife

SB



Trade in Ancient Egypt

التجارة فت مصر القديمة

craftsmen

silver

حرفيون

عصه

statues

artifacts

استمع ومل،

متحونات

حقيقي

		Main vocabu	lary			
presentation	عرض بعديمي	Ancient Egyptians	المصريون	القدماء	metal	معدن
trading	التجارة	weapons		أسحة	economy	الاقتصاد
		Extra vocabu	ilary			
countries	دول	kinds	أنواع	inte	resting (adj.)	مثير للإهتمام
rocks	صخور	harder (adj.)	اقوی من	ston	ie	حجارة
different (adj)	مخثيف	shapes	أشكال	fasc	inating (od _j)	مدهن
gold	دهب	popular (adj.)	مشهور	Jew	elry	محوهرات
decorations	دىكورات	art	فن	cult	ure	ನೆತಿದ್

sculptures

true (ad,)

تماثيل

تحف فبية

R	egular verbs			أفعسال منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
trade	يتاحر	traded	heat	يسحن	heated
melt	بيني	melted	hunt	يصطاد	hunted
help	عداسي ,	helped	develop	يطوز	developed
Ir	regular verbs			أفعسال غير منتظم	
Present		Past	Present		Past
buy	پشتری	bought	sell	E.I.I	sold
tell	يشير إ	told	find	724	found
make	يصتع	made	grow	يزرع	grew

Expressions and Phrases

take out the metal parts	يستحرح الأدراء المعديية	make shapes with it	يضبع منها أشكالًا
on the land	على الأرص	more easily	أكثر سهونة
first found	وجد لأول مرة	use (something) for	يستخدم شيئًا ما ق
That's right	هد صحيح	got through	حصل عليها من حلال

Definitions

trade	نحارة	buying and selling things between countries
metal	معدن	something, like gold or iron, that is hard and strong شيء صلب وقوى، مثل الذهب أو الحديد
weapon	سلاح	an object used for fighting or hunting animals غرص يستخدم لمحاربة الحيوانات أو صيدها
economy	اقتصاد	the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used

important sentences and he

- Ancient Egyptians bought and sold many things to other countries.
 - اشترى المصريون القدماء وياعوا أشياء كثيرة لدول أخرى،
- Ancient Egyptians first found metal 7000 years ago in rocks.
 - وجد المصريون القدماء المعدن لأول مرة منذ ٧٠٠٠ عام ق الصحور.
- They used the metal to make tools and weapons.
 - استخدم القدماء المصريون المعدن في صنع الأدوات والأسلحة.
- Ancient Egypt was one of the strongest economies in the world
 - كانت مصر القديمة من أقوى الاقتصادات.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Ancient Egyptions made (meta) weapons sione rocks) that they used to hunt on land
- People buy and sell many things. This is called (weapons | art | culture trading).
- Dalia has a classroom (economy presentation trading metal) about Ancient Egyptions
- People in Ancient Egypt used (cloth silver gold meta) to make tools and weapons
- Ancient Egyptians had a strong (economy presentation gold rock)



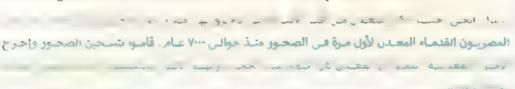


Our cass presentation is about trade in Ancient Egypt. I'm Injy, and this is Dalia. The Ancient Egyptians bought from and sold many things to different countries. This is called trading, Dalia, can you tell us what kinds of things the Ancient Egyptians traded?

عرضنا التقديمي يدور حول التجارة في مصر القديمة. أنا إنجي، وهذه دالياً، اشترى المصريون القدماء من بلندان محتلفة وباعوا أشياء كثيرة، وهذا ما يسمى التجارة، داليا، هل بمكنك أن تخبرينا ما هي أنواع الأشياء التي تأجر بها المصريون القدماء؟



Thanks, Injy. Well, one of the most interesting things they traded with other countries was metal! The Ancient Egyptians first found metal in rocks around 7,000 years ago. They heated the rocks and took out the metal parts. They learned that metal was harder than stone, and that they could melt and make different shapes with it.







That's fascinating, Dalia, thank you. What did they use the metal for?

هَذَا رائع ۽ ذاليا ۽ شكرا لك، فيم استخدموا المعدن؟

They used it to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow things like food more easily Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and decorations. Silver was also used, but it was rarer. As art and culture were very important to the Ancient Egyptians, many of their craftsmen used different types of metal to make statues and sculptures to sell.

استخدموه لصبع الأدوات والأسلحة، حتى بتمكسوا من الصياد على الأرض، ورزاعية أشباء مثال الطعام سنهواء أكبر كان لدهب معددًا سائع سباء المحديد المدام والمتحديد المدام المدام المدام والمتحديات المعادن المعادن المعادن المعادن المدام والمتحدثات لبيعها.







That's right. But they didn't just sell metal to other countries. They also bought some metals. like silver, which they got through trade with countries. And as they traded more, this helped the Ancient Egyptians develop their economy, until Ancient Egypt was one of the strongest (2) economies in the world(3).

(2) قوى العالم (3) ماحف (4)

أسئلة

(5)

هذا صحيح، لكنهم لم بيبعوا المعدن فقط إلى دول أخرى، بل اشتروا بعض المعادن، مثل الفصة، التي حصلوا عليها من خلال التجارة مع البلدان، ومع تدولهم أكثر، ساعد هذا المصريين القدماء على تطوير اقتصادهم، حتى كانت مصر القديمة واحدة من أقوى، الاقتصادات في العالم،

Yes, you only need to look at the Ancient Egyptian artifacts in museums a today to see that this is true.

تعبر ، ما عليك سوى القاء نظرة على القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة في المتاحف اليوم التري أن هذا صحيح.





Well, that's the end of our presentation. Does anyone have any questions (5), please?

، هل لدى أي شخص أي أستنة من عصلكم؟

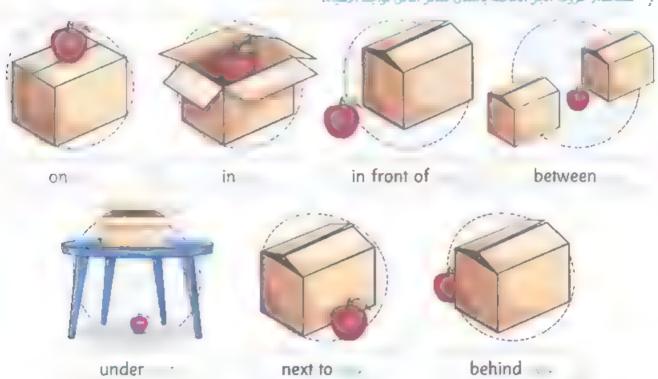
- When did Ancient Egyptians first find metal?
- 2 What did the Ancient Egyptians use the metal for?



حروف الجر الحاصة بالمكان Prepositions of place

We use prepositions of place to say where things are.

. تستخدم حروف الجر الحاصة بالمكان ليدكر أماكن تواجد الأشياء،



للسؤال عن أماكن الأشياء، نستخدم:

Where is the + أسم الشيء ؟
It's + حرف الجر الحاص دالمكان + كالم



B It's under the table.



A: Where is the mouse?

B It's next to the TV.

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head.

و حمالصنع الأنه مرسسر امسمه في حياد جور بدر عبر سه في ما يعتي ده يور الدراء ... و ... و ... و ... و ... و ... و منه و الدكته جنه فيه توجيب لجب الديالية على الله



استمع ومل

Main	VOC	abu	CEV

king	ملك	golden touch	لمسة ذهبية	daughter	days
rose garden	حديقة ورود	castle	ثلعة	teors	دموع

Extra vocabulary

favorite (adj.)	معصن	ground	ارض	strange-looking (adj.)	غريب المنظر
goat	عنزة	sick (adj.)	مريض	wish	أمنية
warm (adj)	313	excited (adj.)	متحمس	special meal	وحيه حاصة
precious (adj.)	ثمين	roses	39139	important	,000

	Regular verbs			أفعسال منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	call	يدعي (يسمى)	called
walk	يمش	walked	trip	يتعثر	tripped
touch	يلمس	touched	celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
ask	يطلب (يسأل)	asked	hug	يحتضن	hugged
start	يبدآ	started	save	ينقذ	saved
return	يعود	returned	change	النها	changed
	Irregular verbs			أفعيبال غير منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
take	يأخذ	took	give	يعطى	gave
think	يفكر	thought	make	يصنع	made
leave	يغادر	left	eat	بأكل	ate
find	أختا	found	lose	يخسر	lost

Expressions and Phrases

	spend time	بقضى الوقت	one night	ذات ليلة
	trip over something	يتعثر في شيء ما	fell much better	يشعر ينسحن
	turn into gold	يتحول إلى ذهب	make (someone's) wish come true 44,	يحول أمنية شخص إلى حق
Į	please, come back	من فضلك، عد مجددًا	don't care about	لأيهتم ب

المثك مايدس واللمسة الذهبية المثك مايدس واللمسة الذهبية



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The Beginning

Many years ago, there lived a king called King M das. He loved three things more than anything else-his daughter, Mar gold, his rose garden, and gold His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigoid But he also iked to look at? all the gold in his castle.

One night, he was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King M'das was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and a warm bed In the morning, the goat felt much better.

في إحسن الليالي، كان المشك يعشى في حديقته عسم تعلير عس شيء عسى لأص. كان ملكزًا عرب استهرائان يهدو مربضا حيد كان المنك أيسس إجبار بطيف، شك الأحد الماعز إلى قلعته، هناك، أعطاه الطعام وسريرًا دامك، في الصبح، شعر الماعم



1

- قين العديد من السوات (1)
- بطر إلى (2)
- عطوف طب (3)
- بشكر (4)
- .قبقة (5)

The Middle

"I would like to thank" you, King Midas," said the goat "What would you like more than anything else in the world?"

King Midas thought for a m nute 5, then said, "I would like everything I touch to turn into gold."

"OK," said the goat, and made the king's wish come true.

قال الماعوّ: «أود أن أشكرك،أيها الملك مايدس». «ما الذي ترغب به أكثر من أي شيء آخر في العالم ٢٠. فكر الملك عايدس لحدة دقيقة، ثمر قال: «أريد أن يتحول كل ما ألمسه إلى دهب». قال الماعو: «حسا» وجعفت أسية الملك تتحقق. King Midas was very excited. After the goat eft, he walked around the castle. When he touched a chair, it turned to goid. When he touched his bed, it turned to goid, too. To celebrate, he asked for a special mea. But when he touched the food, he couldn't eat it because it turned to gold. Then, he went outside? Into the garden to find Marigold. When he hugged her, she also turned to gold!

ث منك مبيدس متحمسا سعية، بعث معادة صعورة قام بالسير حول شعقة، وعندما بمس كرسيًّا، تحلول إلى دهبه، وعندما لمس سريرد، تحبول إلى ذهب أيضًا، بلاحتمال، طلب وجمة حاصة، ولكن عندما نمس طعام، لم يستطع شوله لأنه تحلول إلى للهب، ثم ذهب إلى للحديدة للعثلور على مارجهال، عندما حتضها، تحولت يُشًا إلى اللهب)



- ينجون و أنجاء (6)
- بالحارج (7)
- ر8) دلاي

The End

الدرس الأخلاقها !Moral

Your family is more important than money and materia things

حال فأهم من المال والرأد أم أها يرقي

- I What did the king like the most?
- 2 What happened after the goat left?

Vocabulary Check

Noun اسم

لمسة touch

The king had a golden to ich

wish آمنية

The goat made the king's wish come true

رحلة trip

They went on a trip to Luxor

- يمكن أن تُستخدم بعض الكلمات كأفعالًا وأسماء (nouns/ verbs) مثل:

Verb Jui

يلمس touch

He turned everything he louched into gold

ىتمى wish

I wish I could win the lottery

يتعثر الأاثا

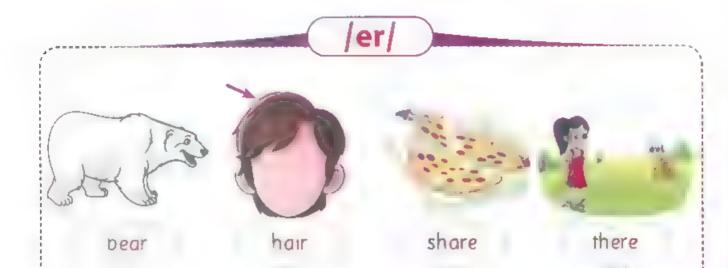
The king tripped over a strange looking goat





()) Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر ومل:









pear



pair



air



tear



wear



a) between b) under

Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding Applying - Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

d Listen and cir	cle the correct a	nswer from a, b, ة الصحيحة:		6
The king	a str	ange-looking god	it one night.	
(a. met – b. hit	– c. tripped over	– d. came by)		
2 The goat looke	d very			
(a. sick - b fir-	- c. healthy - d.	good)		
3 The king took	the goat into his		and helped it.	
(a. house – b. c	ottage – c. castle	– d. garden)		
Everything the	king touched tur	rned into		
(a. dust – b. go	ld – c. wood – d.	paper)		
Choose the corre	ect answer from	a, b, c, or d :	اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:	8
G	" is when you	buy and sell thir	ngs between countries	
a) Trip over	b) Trade	c) Find	d) Mine	
	is the king':	s mask? B It's in	the museum.	
a) Where	b) When	c) What	d) How	
	are objects us	ed for fighting or	hunting animas.	
a) Tools	b) Metals	c) Weapons	d) Castles	
The dog was h	i'd'ng	the door g	nđ I coulan't see it.	
a) on	b) in front of	c) in	d) behind	
***************************************	is the system o	of how the countri	y's money and goods	are
produced and	used.			
a) Fighting	b) Hunting	c) Trade	d) Economy	
Where is m	y jacket? B It's	†	he closet.	
a) in front	b) next	c) in	d) between	
The building is		the school and	the shopping mall.	
a) in	b) under	c) in front	d) between	
8 Look down, yo	our pen is	the de	sk.	

c) in front

d) next

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4 اقرأ وأكمل البص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

materials - between - artifacts - tomb - head

Egypt s famous for having many Ancient artifacts. They are made of different (1) that lasts for a long time. One of the most beautiful (2) from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his (3). The mask s made of gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his (4)

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 saw - They - a snake - the - under - tree.

is - The teacher - of - the - in front - board

3 is - in - The mask - the - box - glass.

with - other - Ancient - Egyptians - traded - countries.

like to - I - would - thank - king - you,.

could - Where - Egyptians - metal - find - Ancient?

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- A (When) is the castle? B: It's on the green hill.
- 2 My house is (next) of the school.

Habiba always puts the pens (in front) to the books.

The office is (next to) the bothroom and the elevator.

Would you put the book (in) the shelf, please?

- 6 I can't see him. I think he's (in front of) that tree.
- 7 The keys fell off (on) the couch.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

How did the Ancient egyptians make weapons



foot file





Iron in Ancient Egypt

الحديد فت مصر القديمة



استمع ومل

	4	Main	vocabular	yı.		
iron	حديد	copper	تحاس	bror	ıze	معدن التروير
craftsmen	الحرفيون	meteorite	ببرك	scar	ab amulet	تميمه بحعران (الحنفساء
		Extra	vocabular	У		
early (adj.)		famous (a مبكر	dj.)	مشهور	dagger	خنجو
fire		possible (d	ıdj.)	معقول	special (adj.)	خاص/ مميز

tire	النار	possible (odj.)	معقول	special (adj.)	خاص/ مميز
heaven	لحبه	precious (ad _j)	ثمين	rarer (adj.)	أبدر أكثر بدره،
items	أعراص	jewelry	محوهرات	agriculture tools	أدوات رراعيه
weapons	أسلحة	trade	تجارة	stone	حجر
image	صورة	fortune	حظ	countries	ا بلدان

Expressions and Phrases

	start using	يدأق استخدام	difficult to use	من الصعب استخدامه
	came from the sky	أبي من السماء	early on	و ددئ الأمر
	easier to find	من السهن إنجادة	around 3,000 years ago	مند خوال ۳۰۰ عام مصت
	this was the result of	کان هدا شخه ل	use (something) for	استخدم شندً ما) ق
·	it's made of	مصنوع من	bring good fortune	يجلب الحظ الجيد



Important tentences

- The early iron used by the Ancient Egyptians came from a meteorite.
 - الجديد الذي استخدمه القدماه المصريون في نادئ الأمر جاء من بيزك،
- Ancient Egyptians believed iron came from the sky and called it "the metal of heaven"
 - · اعتقد القدماء المصريون أن الحديد جاء من السماء ولقبوه بـهمعدن الجنة».
- Early on, the Ancient Egyptians used from for small items i ke jewelry
 - في بادئ الأمر، استخدم القدماه المصريون الحديد في صناعة الأغراص الصغيرة كالمجوهرات،
- Later on, the Ancient Egyptians could get more iron through trade with other countries لاحقًا، تمكن القدماء المصريون من الحصول على المزيد من الحديد من خلال التحارة مع البلدان الأخرى.



1. When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?

متب بدأ المصريون القدماء فب استخدام الحديد؟ The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago.

Before (1) iron, they worked with copper and bronze.

ديناً المصوريون القدماء باستخدام الحديد مند أكثر من 5000

عدار، لأدن بعليدا لأدو يستعلمون بلحاس والدولياء

Ú

- س (1) ن المدهش (2)
- من المدهش (2) نفت عن (3)
- ىدوب (4)

2. Where did they find iron?

أين وجدوا الحديد؟

Amazingly a some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined a tron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to me to a, which often wasn't possible.

ومين المدهنش أن بعيض الحديث سدى استخدموه في بنادي الأمار كان مين النيازك، عصع الحرفيون المصريون القدمية حجريًّا مشهورًا بمقسرة تنوت عسم آمنون مين ليبزك، كما أنهم فامنوا باستخرج الحديث مين الأعلى، تكنهم وجدوا أنبه مين الصعب جدد، ستحديدة لأنبه يحتج إلى دار ساحة جدا المتواردة وهو أمار لمريكن معكث على كثيار على الأحيان،

3. Why did they think iron was special?

لماذا اعتقدوا أن الحديد مميز؟ They thought⁽⁵⁾ iron was special because they believed it came from the sky (because of the meteorites). They called it "the metal of heaven". For them⁽⁶⁾, iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.

الشقد المصريون انقصاء أن الحديد معير بأنهم اعتقب أنه جاء من سنماء (بسبب لنيا ٤)، وأجنقها عبها أسم ومحدق الحياة» بالنسبة لهم كان الحديد أعلى من النهب لأنه كان أكثر ذدرة.

(5)	اعتدا
(6)	بانىسىة بهمر
(7)	شتع
(8)	لاحقا
(9)	دون

4. What did they use iron for?

فيم استخدموا الحديد؟

Early on, the Ancient Egyptians used from for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were common? metals for tools because they were easier to find. But later on 8, from agricultural tools and weapons began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries. (9).

في بادئ الأمر، استخدم المصريبون العدماء الحديد للأعراض الصحيرة، مثل المحيمات، كان التحاس والتروير من المعادن الشائعة للأدوات لأنها كانت أسهل في العشور عبيها، ولكن في وقت لاحق، بدأت الأدوات والأسلحة الرزاعية الحديدية في الطهاور وكان ذلك تتبجة حصول المصريين القدماء على المزيد من الحديد من حجال شجارة مع بسدان الأحرى.

كيفية كتابة منف حقائق How to write a fact file

Research facts. You can use books or safe online websites. Make notes under headings like; When ...? Why ...? Where ...? What ...?

كنك استخدام الكتب أو المواقع الإشاوسة الرَّسة، قيم شاويس الملاحظات تُحبُّ ساويان رئيسية الشلُّ

Use formal language and choose a tense that is appropriate to the topic. When you speak about facts in the past, use the past tense. When you speak about general facts, use present tense.

i was the way were with a first warm of some states of and a superior of the same than the main

Divide the text into questions and concluded answers.

Use correct language, punctuation marks, and make sure your spelling is correct.

للمديد الله وللماث أرقيم المحيجة المحال المحالة الإعداء

When did the Ancient Egyptians start using silver?

Ancient Egyptians started using silver from around 4,500 years ago.

Where did they find the silver?

There weren't many silver mines in Egypt, so we think they brought it from other countries through trade.

What did they use silver for?

They used it to make jewelry and mirrors. They also used sheet silver to decorate statues.

Why don't we find many silvers Ancient Egyptian artifacts?

Because silver is not very durable.

Sadly, the salts in the tombs

destroyed a lot of it, so we cannot see very much of it today.

تبيعة الجعران Scarab Amulet

This scarab amulet is from Ancient Egypt and is more than three thousand years old. It is made of copper. People wore jewe by with the image of a scarab to protect them and bring them good fortune

Egypt and

ئىد. ئەلەر ئەلەر لىك بەلۇرىدى ئايىر 11 ئىدىر قىلىدىگار الىمالىرى دارى بارايى

The state of the s



Lessons 4 & 5



Remembering • Understanding Applying Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

ŋ	CI	hoose the correc	t answer from a, b	, c, or d: دول الإجابة الصحيحة:	8 استمع وضع دائرة ح	3
		Iron,	, and bronze o	are meta's that Ance	nt Egyptians used.	
		a) fire	b) copper	c) grain	d) meteorite	
		Early Iron that A	ncient Egypt ans use	d came from		
		a) mines	b) earth	c) meteorites	d) the ground	
		It was quite diff of	cult to use iron as it	needed very not	to me t	†
		a) metal	b) meteorite	c) craftsmen	d) fire	
ļ		Ancient Egypt an	s called from "the me	eta of	11	
		a) heaven	b) fire	c) earth	d) meteorite	
L		For Ancient Egypt	nans, ron was more p	precious than gold as	it was	
		a) cheaper	b) weaker	c) rarer	d) deeper	
		Early on, Anc en	t Egyptians used iroi	n to make small tem	s l'ke	,
		a) chairs	b) tables	c) jewelry	d) grains	
		They believed to	e stone could bring t	hem good		
		a) job	b) money	c) fortune	d) friends	
	8	A scarab amulet	is made from			
		a) stone	b) copper	c) metal	d) gold	
n	R	ead and comple	te the text with the	e words in the box:		
				لتخدام الكلمات المساعدة:	·	4
		Grou	und — Ancient — scara	b - precious - fortune		
	ar	mazing informatio (2) Egypti	n about (1) and smore than three	artifacts in Ancient Egi amulet A scarab thousand years old It and durable, People	amu et is from is made of copper	
	th	e .mage of the sca	rab to protect them a	nd bring them good	(4)	
E	R	lead the text and	d answer the quest	ions: الأسئلة:	اقرأ النص وأحب عن	5
	ve ye Ar	ry <u>rare</u> and valual ears ago Before it, ncient Egyptians us	ble Ancient Egyptian they worked with co sed came from a me	It wasn't only durables started using from to opper and bronze. The effective that's why A simore precious and	nore than 5,000 ne early iron that Ancient Egyptians	
				and weapons began		

Choose the c	correct answer	from a,	b, c, or d:
--------------	----------------	---------	-------------

- 1 Iron was durable and in Ancient Egypt.
 - a) cheap
- b) common
- c) valuable d) inexpensive
- 2 The early iron came from
 - a) earth
- b) mountains
- c) meteorites
- d) rivers

- 3 The underlined word "rare" means ...
 - a) uncommon
- b) common
- c) too much
- d) many

Answer the following questions:

Why did the Ancient Egyptians call iron "the metal of heaven"?

Summarize the passage in two sentences

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

5 early - The - iron - a meteorite - came - from.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

copper and bronze were common in Ancient Egypt

Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

5ُ 🕦 اكتب فقرة من 50 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الأثية:

"Scarab amulet"

Where is it from? - What was It made of?





Vocabulary



gold

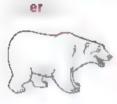
granite



glass

clay

Pronunciation







bear

hair

share







there

rare

pear







pair

air

tear



wear

Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense

Affirmative Form:

(. تكملة الجملة + التصريف الثاني للقعل + (الفاعل) + Subject

Regular verbs:



Ancient Egyptions loved animals.

(cregular verbs:



Ancient Egyptians kept monkeys and baboons

Negative Form:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) ر ما الجملة الجملة على المحالة على المحالة الجملة على المحالة الجملة على المحالة ال

People in the post didn't have cars

Yes/No question:





A Did you do your homework? B: Yes, I did.

Wh question

	*			
,	Question word	d d	النس من النصار (inf) subject	?
.	B- Subject (العلمل)		التصريف الثاني للفعل	11



36



CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



Lesson 1



دهب	
طس	
حرانیت	
رحاح	
مرشد	
وَمِينَ	

بحف فبية

مباح حجر مواد حمر

متين

Lesson

-
فرد
فرد الرناح
بمساح
فرس البهر
صفر
طائر أبو متحل
ئعبان

حكمة

حيوانات أليفة

وثران الحياة الأحرى تماثيل سلأحف حبوب أسود مقبر

Lesson 3

تحارة	
معدن	
سلاح	
اقتضاد	
مئك	
ثمیں	
دب	
شعر	
ىنشارك	
دموع	

ابية

مزارعون

دهب فيعة لمسة عريب المنظر أمييه روح مر بادر کمثری F19.00

Lessons 485

حديد	
تحاس	
حمحر	
الحبه	

يرومر

حرفيون سرك محوهرات

WRITING TIME



How to write about artifacts in Ancient Egypt:

We have many art facts from Ancient Egypt.

- 2 One reason is + مسرية قديمة عبيب وجود آثار مصرية
- 3 Ancient Egyptions used materials that can last forever.
- . سبب الاستخدام + اسم مادة حام + They used
- . مبب الاستخدام + اسم مادة خام + They also used
- 6 They liked to use gold + سبب الاستخدام.

We have many artifacts from Ancient Egypt. Because of reasons such as climate. We have hot, dry weather that helps preserve the artifacts. Ancient Egyptians used materials that could last forever. They used granite to build the Pyramids. They also used clay to make pots. They liked to use gold because it's durable and valuable.

How to write about pets in Ancient Egypt:

Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets.

- 2 They particularly loved cats + السبب
- 3 They also kept animals like + أسماء حيوانات أليمة
- 4 They also loved birds especially +
- . مكانته في مصر العديمة + The ibis

Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly loved cats because they believed cats could look after them and keep them safe. They also kept animals like monkeys, hippos, and even lions. Ancient Egyptians loved birds as well, especially falcons and the ibis. The ibis represented wisdom in Ancient Egypt.

How to write a fact file about an ancient artifact/ object:

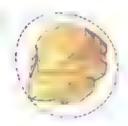
What is the artifact/ object that you are writing about and where is it from?

- 2 How old is it?
 - What is it made of?
 - How did people use #?
 - Why was it important?

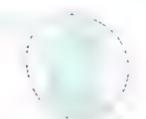
- This is a scarab amulet, and it is from Ancient Egypt.
- -It's around 3,000 years old.
- A scarab amulet is made from a precious, dark green stone.
- People in Ancient Egypt wore jewelry with the image of a scarab amulet.
- It was important to people in Ancient Egypt because they believed it could protect them and bring them good fortune.

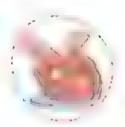
TRUDENT S BOOK MORNEY

Look and write:









Complete the conversation with the past simple:

Mayar : Hi, Nesma!

you have a nice weekend?

Nesma : Hi, Mayar! Yes, I

. I went to Al-Azhar Park with my

family.

Mayar : What.

you do there?

Nesma We a picnic. Then we went on a boat ride. It

Mayar : you go hiking?

Nesma. No, we didn't. We wanted to, but it started to rain

you a good weekend?

in bed the whole time!

Read and match:

trade

a the system of how a country's money and goods are

produced and used

metal

b something, like gold or iron, that is hard and strong

weapon

c buying and selling things between countries

economy

d an object used for fatting in huiting unimais

Complete the text using the prepositions in the box:

between - in - on - Under

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamur's mask, which was found (1) his tomb. The mask is god with bue lines (2) god lines (3) his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake (4) the top of his head.







Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Tarek and Talia were at the Museum of Ancient History last (a. week - b. month - c. vacation - d. year)
- 2 Dr Fayez was their ...

(a. friend - b. qu'de - c. cousin - d. uncie)

3 The Pyramids were built with.

(a. cay - b. glass - c. granite - d. gola)

4 Ancient Egyptians could find clay by the ... (a. farms - b. tombs - c. lake - d. river)



Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Ancient Egyptians used iron to hunt animals.

d) tools a) metals b) weapons c) stones is when you use your knowledge to make good decisions.

a) Economy b) Grain c) Trade Ancient Egyptians pets and mummies to preserve them for a long time.

a) made b) traded

c) mummified d) produced

4 When a metal is very hard, it is called

a) valuable b) useless

c) durable

d) rare

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

raise - economy - glass - hunt - jewelry

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded Metal was harder than (1) and they could melt it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons so that they (2) animals. Gold and silver were popular metals for making and art to sell. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian .(4)..... to grow.

Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar is a student in grade six. He adores reading, especially short stories that he can find at the school's library. His favorite story is "King Midas and the Golden Touch". It's about a king who loves his daughter, his garden, and gold more than anything else in the world. One night, the king helped a sick goat that looked very sick. To thank him, it made his wish come true. The king could turn everything he touched into gold. Omar learned from the story that the people we love are more precious than gold.

Choose the correct answer from a. b. c. or d:

- 1 Omar adores
 - a) swimming
- b) running
- c) reading
- d) nunt na

- The king loved his
- and his garden so much. b) daughter
 - c) son
- d) cousin
- 3 The underlined verb "come true" means
 - a) travel

a) castle

- b) happen
- c) qo
- d) need

Answer the following questions:

- Where can Omar find the short stories?
- What did Omar learn from the story?



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا؛

did - How - materials - use - Ancient - Egyptians - the?

2 is - between - The book - and - the desk - the bench.

in good - The c mate - the tomb - kept - condition.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقر واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

Ancient Egyptians (know) that good is durable

she last visit her grandparents? When (do)

Punctuate the following:

صع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

I'm tarek and this is dalia.

Write a text of about FIFTY(50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 50 كلمة باستحدام العناصر الأثية:

"Iron in Ancient Equpt"

Why was iron special? How did Ancient Egyptians use +?











ALL PARTIES STRUCK



Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

statues - Did - great - went - do

troor Hi, Heba. you have a nice weekend?

Hena Hi, Nour! Yes, I to the Egyptian Museum.

What did you there?

Heba: I saw a lot of beautiful

Nour Wow, it's

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

(Trade Economy Metal) is something hard like gold and iron.

- . The cat is (in on between) the couch and the closet
- 3 We use (museums materia's pets) to make different things.
- 4 Nadia (visit visited visiting) the Museum of Ancient History last week.
- 5 The (statue iron metal) was amazing. It looked exactly like the king
- 6 What did you (study studying studied) yesterday?
- 7 Hani (doesn't don't didn't) go hiking last week.
- 8 (What Where When) is the school? B It's behind my house
- A (meta. weapon glass) is an object used for fighting or hunting animals. The Ancient Egyptians used (gold - silver - clay) to make pots.

- I liked to Ancient Egyptians gold + use.
- did When start Iron Ancient Egyptians using?

preserve — The dry — the — climate — helped — artifacts.

- 6 last Where you did qo weekend?
 - didn't He meet at the yesterday anyone party.





A Box of Toys





Listen, point, and say

استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



doil's house



rollerblades

عجلات ثريح



action figure



marbles كرأت الرخام





boara game



cudd y toy



train set



skateboard



actually	
though	
cool (adj.)	

في الواقع

على الرغم من دنك رائع younger (adj.) brilliant (odj.) older (odj.)

اصعر سا عنفري أكبر سيا

favorite (odj.)

fast (adj.) successful (adj.) مقصن سريع

باجح

Conjugation of verbs

	Regular verbs			أفعسال منظمية	
Present	-	Past	Present		Past
visit	ىرور	visited	love	يحي	loved
play	يلعب	played	want	يريد	wanted
look for	يبحث عن	looked for	try	يجرب	tried
invent	يحترع	invented			
	Irregular verbs			أفحال غير منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
find	بحد	found	make up	يۇلف	made up
have	يمثلك	had	know	يعرف	knew
beat	بهرم	beat	think	าฐระกำ	tnought

Expressions and Phrases

on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	have a go on	يجزب
after a while	بعد فترة قصيرة	very often	كثيرًا جدًا
so do I	وأنا كذلك	I'd love to	أود أن

Definitions

beat	A)A)	be more successful than someone in	n a game ان تکون آکثر بحاحًا من شخص ما فی بعبه
have a go	나>구1	try something	به الله ما الله الله الله الله الله الله
made up	أشاراحرع	thought of or invented	فکری او احترع شیا

- Yaseen found a box of his old toys at his grandma's house
- He loved playing with his old action figures
- عدما كان دم صعبرًا، كان المطار لعبية المفصلة. When Adam was younger, his favorite toy was a train set
- Fares didn't have rollerblades, but he had a skateboard. . . فارس لعر مكن لدمه عجلات بربح، ولكن كان لديه بوح تزليج.
- Fares played board games with his older brother, but he usually beat Fares - كان فارس يلعب الأنعاب اللوحية مع أخيه الأكبر ولكنه كان عادة يهزير فارس.
- Fares will look for some of his old toys later.

تحظ مرق م استحد مات الأمل love

- لقد وجد باسين صندوق ألعابه القديم في منزل جدته،

أحب باسان النعب بمجسمات الشخصيات الخاصة به

عارس سوف يبحث عن بعضًا من ألعانه القديمة لأحقًا.

Brilliant! - Cool! - so do I!

love + (inf.) + ing

I love playing with my toys.

I'd love to + (inf.)

للبير الشبائ الثي تغيراس الدهشة والمفاحكة تصع بعدها بمرمة الثلا

I'd love to see my cudd y toy.

"Brilliant! - Cool! - so do I!

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- I rian could go fast with his (act on figure train set marbles skateboard)
- 2 When you (make up look for beat think) something, you invent it
- 3 Saliy feels comfortable when she hugs her (board game marbles cuddly log troin)
- 4 My dad bought me alan (dolt's nouse action figure train set in erblades) that looks like superman.
- 5 I wanted to have a go on my (marbles board game train set to ethodes) but they were small
- 6 Mom (makes looks beats visits) me in every game. She's more successful than me









Did you ast your grandma on the weekend, Yaseen?

هل (رت جدثك في عطبة نهاية الأسوع، يا ياسين ا

Yes, I did I found a box of my old toys at her house, actually تعمر، لقد فعدت، وجدت صندوه من أنعاب القديمة في منزيه، في الدائة



Adam

What did you find in there?

ماڭ وجنات هنائ!

There was an action figure. I loved playing with the کان فلات مجسم شخصیة، تُحیت سعب به،





I loved playing with my old action figures, too: I made up lots of games for them.

أحبيث اللعب بمحسمات الشخصيات ، قديمة الحاصة بيء أيضًا! عند قمت بافتراء التثير من الألعاب،

When I was younger, my favorite toy was a train set

غييما كيث أسعر سناء كابث بعش المقصية القبعات





I a dnt have a train set, but my sister had a big doli's house We both played with it. I don't know where it is now. I found my old rollerblades, though.

لم يكن بندى قطاره ولكن كان لندى أحتى متزل دمية كبير، لعب كلات به. لا أعرف أين هو الأل. على الرغم من ذلك نقند وجندت عجلات التربيج الخاصة بي،



Brilliant! Did you have a go on them?

ئاد، هن قمت يتحرينها ؟

No, I wanted to, but they were too small.

أردت ديث، ويكيه كانت صفيرة حيا.





I didn't have rollerblades, but I had a skateboard. I could go really fast after a while!

بير بكن ثبي عجلات تزلج ، ولكن كان لدى لوح تربج. استطعت الذهاب سريعا به بعد فترة قصيرة،

Cool! Did you play board games when you were younger?

رنع! هل كنت تلعب الأعاب البوحية عندما كنت أصغر سنا؟





Yes, we played board games. I played with my older brother, but he usually beat me!

تعمر ، بعبد ألعاب بوحية. تعنتها مع أخي الأكبر، ولكن كان عادة ما يهرمني،

We didn't play board games very often, but we prayed marbles

لم ينعب الألعاب التوجية في كثير من الأحيال، ولكنتا تعبتا بالكراب الرجامية





So did I I think I'll look for some of my old toys later I'd ove to see my favorite cuddly toy again.

وأن كديك أعتفيد أسى سأنحث عين يعيض ألعجي القديمية في وقيث لاحيق، أود أن أرى دميية العدي مصيدة ليدي ميرة أحيري.





Lesson 1



Remembering 9 Understanding Applyi

Applying

Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 Yaseen loved playing with his brother Sami.
(a. train set - b. marbles - c. action figure - d. board game)

2 Yaseen had a small , that he thought was good fun.
(a. doll's house - b. cuddly toy - c skateboard - d. rollerblades)

3 Yaseen's favorite was his action figure (a. game - b. story - c. activity - d. toy)

4 Yaseen and Sami played board games very often, but Sami usually Yaseen
(a. helped - b. beat - c. shared - d. found)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 Did you your grandma on the weekend?
a) take b) go c) visit d) make up
2 Nagwa has a big house that she likes to play with.
a) board b) cuddly c) train d) doll's
3 Moaz couldn't have a on my rollerblades. They were too small for him.
a) visit b) ride c) go d) action

4 My favorite toy when I was younger was my action .

a) board b) house c) set d) figure

5 I often played board with my brother, but he usually beat me.
a) games b) toys c) figures d) houses

6 Salwa just thought of a new game. She it up.

a) made b) had c) went d) loved
7 My friend has an amazing set. He loves playing with it

a) figure b) cuddly c) train d) board

8 When you someone in a game, you are more successful than he is.

a) help b) share c) make up d) beat

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

skateboard - younger - beat - board - house



Nader and Habiba are best friends. They met every weekend since they were ten.

When Nader was (1) , he loved playing marbles. He didn't have rollerblades, but he had a (2) that could really go fast. Habiba really enjoyed playing with her doll's (3) . She had a cuddly toy that was soft and nice. Habiba and Nader often played (4) games together to enjoy their free time



Read the text and answer the questions:



Hello! My name is Waleed I always visit my granama on the weekend. When I visited my grandma last weekend. I found a box of my oid toys in her house. I was so excited to see all my oid toys again. When I was younger, my tuvorite toy was the train set. I loved playing with my aution figures, too! I made up lots of games for them. My sister had a big do! 's house. We both played with it. I also found my rollerbiades. I wanted to have a go on them, but they were too small.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about
 - a) Waleed's toys
 - c) Waleed's house
- 2 Waleed loved playing with
 - a) action figures
 - c) morbles
- 3 The underlined verb "have a go" means
 - a) like
- b) try something

- b) Waleed's sisters
- d) Wateed's grandparents
- b) rollerblades
- d) cuddly toys
- c) dislike
- d) invent

Answer the following questions:

- 4 What was Waieed's favorite toy when he was young?
- 5 What did Waleed's sister have?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



- I did What there, you Omar find?
- 2 didn't very ptay when We games board
- 3 have Did he a go skateboard on the?
- 4 again I'd to see love my cuddly toy

6 Punctuate the following:



my favorite toy was a train set







Lesson 2





WELL WAY BUILDING BARRIES BARR



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary



بعثة العميضة hide and seek



لعبة المربعات hopscotch

S	kij	pp	in	g	الحبل.	ы
---	-----	----	----	---	--------	---

yet	حتى الان	interesting (adj.)	مثير للاهتمام	colored (adj.)	منون
chałk	طباشير	difficult (adj.)	صعب	stickers	ملصقات
helmet	خودة	knee pads	واق رکية	imagination	حيال

Conjugation of versa disall and

	Regular verbs			أفعيبال متتغلمة	
Present	-	Past	Present		Past
start	أعم	started	use	يستحدم	used
practice	يتدرب	practiced	prefer	يفضل	preferred
	irregular verbs			أفحال غير منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
hide	يختبئ	hid	draw	يرسمر	drew
hurt	پؤذی	hurt	fall off	يسقط	fell off

Expressions and Phrases

t's realy interesting	إنه حقًا مثير بالإهتمام	for a very long time	هره طوينة حدًّا
proctice a lot with	يتدرب كثيرًا مع	at all	على الإصلاق
it was really good fun	كان حفًا ممتعًا	quite small	صعير إلى حد ما

- Rania started her project about toys and games

بدأت ربيا مشروعها عن اللعب و لألعاب

· When she was younger, she liked playing hide and seek

- عبدماً كابت صغيرة كابت تجب أن تلعب لعبة العميصة.

- Sarah was good at hide and seek, too. She also liked playing hopscotch

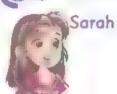
- سارة كانت جيدة أيضًا في لعبة الغميضة، وكانت تحب أيضًا لعبة المربعات.





Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ ونبادل الأدوار:



Hi Rania, have you started the project about toys and games yet? عرضاً ربياء هن بدأت المشروع بخاص بالألعاب والنعب بعد؟

Hi Sarah. Yes, I started it on the weekend It's really interesting!

مرحبا سارة، بعم، بدأت دبك في عطفة بهاية الأسبوع، إنه مثير للاهتمام حقا!



Sarah

Yes, it is What games did you like playing when you were younger? بعد ، بد کننگ ما الألعاب التي أحست بعيد عندما کنت أصعر سال

I thought hide and seek was fun. I was very good at hiding. عتمد لعبة العميصة كانت ممتعة. كنت جيدة جدًا في الاختياء.



Sarah

I was good at it, too! I could hide for a very long time. I also really liked playing hopscotch with my friends. We used different colored chalk to draw the squares.

عَد كنت جبدة في ذلك أسلًا، كان يمكاني ، لاحتب عثرة طويلة جدًّا . أن أنضًا أحببت حقا لعب لعبة المربعات مع أصدقائي, استخدمنا طبشير منونًا برسم المربعات،

I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping. عثقت أن نعبة بعربعات كانت جيدة إلى حداما، ولكني فضنت نعبة تط بحيل





I tiked skipping, but I wasn't very good at 't Some skipping games are so difficult!

أحبيث بعبة بط بحين، لكنني لم أكن جيدة في ذلك، يعض ألقاب بط بحيل صعبة حدًّا،

Yes, they are I had to practice a lot with my sister! عمر ، هي كديث كان علي اهتارت كبير. مع أحياً

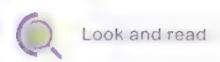




Ah, my brother didn't practice with me He didn't like skipping at all. We often played marbles together, though

حى سم يتسرف معى، سم يكن يحب نبط الحمل على الإطلاق! إلا أنت غالبا ما لعبتا الكوات الرحامية





My Favorite Toy مَنْفُولُهُ العِيْمُ المُفْلِقُ العَالِمُ المُفْلِقُ العَالِمُ العَلَيْمُ العَلَيْمُ العَلَيْمُ

by Youssef

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I ovea going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast. I My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really nurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.







- ىرتقىلى (2)
- الأول (3)

Language Notes

To talk about things, we could /couldn't do well in the past.

نتي كنا بجيد أو بمر أيت فعيها في الماضي،

Subject + was/were + good at + noun or v.ing.

Subject + wasn't/weren't + good at + noun or v.ing.

I was good at skipping.

They weren't good at hide and seek.





We use intensifiers to give a stronger meaning to adjectives and verbs.

لتخدم ممعزرات الصفات والأفعال، لإعظاء درجة من القوة لقصقة والفعل،

They're used to give a stronger meaning to the adjective or the verb.

إ يستخدموا لحعن بصفة أو هعن أقوى،

معرز intensifier

صعة adjective

really الم I was really good at hiding!

معزز intensifier

فعل verb

really + verb معل I real y tiked playing hopscotch.

intensifier 3500

adjective منة

Sarah wasn't very good at skipping جدًا very

intensifier معزز adjective

Some skipping games are so difficult حدا ٥٥

ILL D

quite:

It was 1 to make the adjective less say, it is nest before the adjective).

سحده بحين بتعه أفر كية ابدأن ثير الصفةي

صفة adjective (adjective

quite - I thought rope the was quite good, but I preferred skipping

or oil

[It's used to strengthen the negative sentences

معزر intensifier هعل

at all على الإطلاق He didn't ..ke sk pping at al

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Manal is (not quite very at a l) good at reading. She reads four books every week.
- 2 My brother didn't like running (so really quite at all)
- 3 1 th t k skipping is (really quite so very) good but I prefer hopscatch
- 4 They (d dn't really so very) enjoyed riding their bikes. It was great fun
- 5 Naur doesn't enjoy playing outside (very really so at al.)
- 6 Briliant' I think you are (quite not at all really) good at playing tennis
- 7 Salma was really (happier happiest happy happiy) She got the full mark





Lesson 2



Remembering # Understanding Applying * Analyzing # Evaluating # Creating

0	Choose the cor	rect answer	from a.	b. c. or d
	CHOOSE the tol		110111 07	0, 4, 01 0.



1 My cousins liked	playing	They used colored cl	halk to draw the squares
a) hide and seek	b) skipping	c) hopscotch	d) running
2 and	seek was my favor	or game when I wo	is younger
a) Catch	b) Hide	c) Skip	d) Run
3 We all wanted to	go fast on our	It was really	good fun
a) stickers	b) skateborrds	c) projects	d) games
4 When Amina wa	s younger she wasi	nt good at making u	new games
a) very	b) so	c) really	d) at all
5 Put on your	on your he	ed It hurts if you fo	a Loff your skateboard
a) knee pads	b) chalk	c) helmet	d) hopscotch
6 I think hopscotc	h is goo	od, but I prefer hide	and seek
a) really	b) quite	c) very	d) so
7 He s	kipping at all. He t	hought some sk ppir	ng games were difficult
a) liked	b) loved	c) adored	d) didn't like
8 You can wear	to proter	t your knee while sl	kateboarding
a) helmet	b) I shit	c) knee pads	d) ro lerb ades

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



seek - Interesting - bored - chalk - hapscotch

Salwa started a project about toys and games ast week. She thinks its really

(1) When Salwa was younger, she thought hide and (2) was film.

She was very good at hid ing. She also beed pluying (3) with her fire its at the park. They used colored (4) to draw the squares. Salwa thought skipping was quite good, but she preferred in iting. She thought it's great fun.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



- I could She for long a very hide time.
- 2 often We played together marbles.
- 3 did What I ke you games playing?
- 4 didn't My brother like skipping at all.
- 5 started Have you yet project your?

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:



- 1 We are (so) good at climbing I think we need more practice
- 2 They didn't enjoy playing hide and seek (real y)
 - 3 It's (at a.l) not to go out today. I'll stay home.
 - 4 The book was really (fun)
 - 5 I (so) like your present, thank you.
 - 6 This dress is (rea y) nice, but still not nice enough to buy.
- 7 My brother speaks English (quite) well. He speaks like Americans
 - 8 Nour thinks skipping is (very) good, but she prefers running

Punctuate the following:



rania wasn't good at skipping

Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:



"Games you are good at"

What games are you good at? How often do you play them?



Lesson 3







Listen and say:

اسىمع وقل

the market button trunk		ا لسوق ڈلا حرطوم العبن	stoll train set sail		کشك لعبه انقطار شراع
tired (adj.)	متعب	parents	والدان	hot (adj.)	حار
feet	أقدام	tomatoes	طماطعر	lemonade	عصبر اسيمون
wood	خشب	metal	معدن	boats	هو رب
animals	حيوانات	today	اليوم	wheels	عجلاب
prilliant (adj.)	رائع	beautiful (adj.)	حمل	amazing (ad,	رائع
elephant	.1.5	cloth	قماش	child	طفل ا

	Regular verbs			أفعيال منتظمية	
Present	-	Past	Present		Past
shop	يتسوق	shopped	want	يريف	wanted
ask	يطلب	asked	wait	ينتظر	waited
look	ينظر	looked	enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed
smile	يبتسمر	smiled	pick up	يلتقط	picked up
push	يضعط على	pushed	turn	يعمل /يدور	turned
start	أبليا	started	move	يتحرك	moved
stop	يتوقف	stopped	laugh	يضحك	laughed
	Irregular verbs			أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	_	Past	Present		Past
hurt	يۆلمر	hurt	see	پرې	saw
choose	يختار	chose	sit	يجلس	sat
make	يصنع	made	come	يأق	came
take	يأخذ	took	buy	یشتری	bought

		A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR
يذهب للمنزل	almost finished	على وشك الإنتهاء
ائتظر هناا	get you some	أحضر لك بعصيب
مصبوع من	enjoy looking	يستمتع بالنظر
يجلس خلف	made out of wood	مصنوع من الخشب
يضع (شيئًا ما)	started to move	بدأت في التحرك
مندُ عدة سنوات	I'll take it	سأشتريها
	يذهب للمنزل انتظر هنا! مصنوع من يجلس خلف يضع (شبئًا ما)	get you some مصوع من enjoy looking made out of wood started to move



We loved playing with our train set

لقد أحبينا اللعب بالقطار



Look and read

انطبر واقرأ

Alt was tired. His parents were shopping at the market. It was a hot day A is feet hurt, and he really wanted to go home 'Are you OK, Ali?" asked Morr "We've almost finished We need tomatoes from this stall Wait here, then I'l get you some emonade " "Thanks Mom," said Al. He waited, and then he saw a stali with toys made from wood and metal There were boats, trains, and anima s. Ali's parents were choosing vegetables 4 so Al asked if he could look at the toys (1)"OK," said Dad "But we aren't buying toys today!" (2)"That's OK," said Ali. "I enjoy looking". (3)كان على متعبد كان واللذاه يتسوقان في السوق، كان يوما حبرا. كانت قدما على تؤلمه ، وأراد حق العودة

بحباح إلى

(4)حصر واب

انتظر هب، ثم سأحصر لك تعيض عصيار اليمون».

كان والداعلي يخدون الخصار ، لذلك سأل على عما إذا كان وإمكانه النظر إلى الألعاليد

An old man was sitting behind the stall, making a small cat out of wood the saw Ali looking at the toys and smiled The man picked up a train "Look at this," he said. He pushed a button under the train and the wheels turned. When he put it down on the stall, it started to move.

حمل أنت بخير، على؟ « سأنت ينا الأمر ، «لقند انتهيننا تقريباً، نحتاج إلى الطماط من هند ، تكشك.

"Do you like trains?" he asked.

"I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago" Alt replied, "But this s brilliant".

Air looked at the train again. It was smal?, but very beautiful. The other toys on the stall were amazing, too. There was an elephant which moved its trunk. There was a boat with beautiful cloth sails.

كان رجل عجوز بجلس حلف الكشك ، يصنع قطة صعيرة من الخشب. رأى على ينظر إلى الألعاب والتسم.

سأل ،برچن: «هل تحب القطارات؟» ،

أجاب على: «توقفت عن اللعب بقطاري قبل نصع سنوات»، «لكن هذا رائع»،

كان هناك قارب بأشرعة جميلة مصبوعة من القماش،

Ali's dad came to see. "Wow! My brother 6 and I had a train like this when I was a child!" he said. "We loved playing with our train set" He picked up the train, smiling "I'll take it!" said Dad.



(6)

(7)

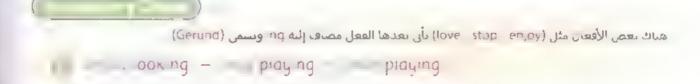
Ali laughed. "I thought? you said we weren't buying toys today, Dad!" Dad laughed. You can play with it too!"

المنط الشعار منتسما قال الأرائ فسأحدهمه المحيف على: فاعتقدت أنك قبت إثنا ثمر تشتر ألحاد اليوم يا أبي!». منحك الأباد فيمكنك أن تلعب معها أيضاله.

(De	finitions		
stall	كشك	a large table that you use to sell things fro السوق.	om at a market طاولة كبرة يستحدمها لبيع الأشياء في
button	د	what you touch to make a machine work	ما تتمسه تجعن الآلة تعمل
trunk	ر حرطوم انفس	the long nose of an elephant	أنف الفيل الصويل
saıl	۰ شراع	strong pieces of cloth that make a boat m نارب یتحرك.	ove قصع قوية من القماش التي تجعل الن

Check point

- 1 What was the man in the stall doing?
- 2 What did Ali think about the train?





Gerund Verbs followed by (verb + ing) (ing + افعال متبوعة (بفعل

right started reading star es a year ago start continue Mouz continued skipping for a while. finish They finished painting their room yesterday stop I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago like They like playing with a train set. love Nour loves making up new games enjoy I enjoy watching TV at night. prefer I prefer drinking coffee to tea dislike We dislike playing with old toys. hate Nader and Omar hate playing hide and seek imagine They imagined flying a plane

Check point

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Salma finished (study) at 7 pm
2 Adam enjoys (played) tennis with his friends
3 Hossam distikes (skip) at all
4 Waleed and Osama love (sing)
5 He must stop (shout) at the library
6 I like (walk) in the rain
7 Can you imagine (wins) a ticket for the concert?
8 Chefs started (cook) . in the marning







Words with "ght" and "gh"



Listen and say:

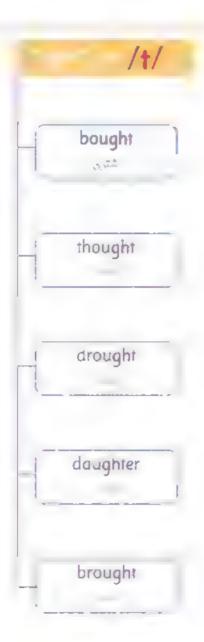
استمع وقل:

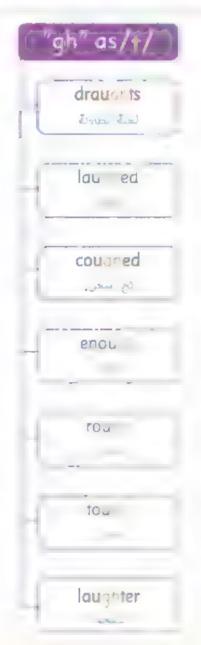
- When "ght" is in the middle or at the end of a word, the "gh" is silent. We only pronounce the final "-t".

عندما اللهان "ght" في منتصف أو بهاية الكلية إلا بتطق "gh" ونتطق فقط حرف "t" الأخير،

"gh" in the middle or at end of a word is usually pronounced / /.

عنده تأثل "gh" في منتصف أو بهاية الثمة عاسا ما تنطق الأل







هناك بعض الكلمات لا تنطق فيها "gh" مثل: thou ph - through.





Look, read, and notice

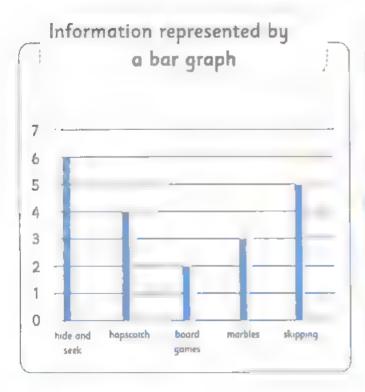
الطرء اقرأ، ولاحط

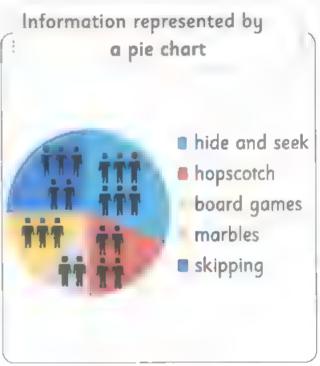
We use graphs like bar graphs and pie charts as a way to show information.

Last week, we had a class vote on the first five free-time games in the class. 20 students voted and the results came as follows.

الأسلوع المحلي قلبنا بعمل تصويت في القصل لأقلبين حميل ألعاب اغتلام وقلت الفراع ، شارك عشرون إمالًا في اعتمالياه بجاء." الشائج كالتابي

Games	hide and seek	h	opscotch		board games	marbles	sk pping
Numbers of students	6)	4	,	2	3	5









Lesson 3



Applying Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

d) market

d) studied

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 Omar was doing a class quiz about free-time (a. toys - b. games - c. projects - d. stories)

2 Nader loved games tike _______, climbing, and playing football (a. skipping - b. hide and seek - c. action figures - d. running)

3 Reda enjoyed playing and hide and seek. (a. hopscotch = b, running - c of moing = d footbal)

4 Sama preferred playing with her (a. skateboard - b ro ierbades a do is house - d. train set)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I A is a large table that you use to sell things at the market a) toy b) button c) stall d) sail

2 The is the long nose of the elephant.

a) market b) trunk c) sail d) stall

3 Push the to make the machine work, please.

b) stall a) trunk c) market d) button

4 You need a to make the boat move. a) sail b) button

5 Can you imagine a train? a) drive c) drives d) drove b) driving

6 My cous ns enjoyed squares for the hopscotch

a) draw b) draws c) drawing

7 When will you finish for your exam?

8 Could you stop your little brother, Noha?

b) study

a) studying

a) bothers b) bothered c) bother d) bothering

c) studies

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

market stall pragra - tut om m

Ai really enjoys spending time outside Last week the went shopping with his parents He saw a stal that sod togs The mar in the 2) showed Air a boat, a train bet and small bus that could have A thought the (3) were quite good, but he preferred the boat He trought it was really nteresting, so he bought . When he went none, he en yea ... with t

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



- 1 stopped She playing with set the train.
- 2 liked They playing with figures act on
- 3 he Did finish the book reading?
- 4 with our We enjoyed going shopping parents

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:



- I Ade dian't like (play) board games at all.
- 2 They enjoyed (read) short stories.
- 3 Mona stopped (run) to have some rest.
- 4 We imagined (climb) a very big mountain.
- 5 He hates (skip) _____ and hopscotch.
- 6 I started (make) up new games when I was young.
- 7 Mom finished (cook) dinner two hours ago.
- 8 Fares and Nader continued (practice) for the race.
- 9 They finished (paint) the posters and tided up.
- 10 Hanaa and Doaa prefer (paint) with oil paints.

() Punctuate the following:



ola laughed when she played draughts

wae bought some marbies yesterday



Writing & Project





Listen and say:

استمع ومّل:

video	game

bricks أنعاب لفيديو

طوب (مكعبات ساء

creative (adj.)

console مبدع

بوجة تحكم

Extra vocabulary

outside	بالخارج	weekend	عطلة بهاية الأسبوع	cities	مدن
new (adj.)	جديد .	images	صور	modern (adj.)	حليث
adventure games	ألعاب مغامرة	places	اماكن	problem	مشكلة
difficult (odj.)	صعب	exciting (adj.)	مثير	great (adj.)	عظيمر

Expressions and Phroses

all kinds of	كل أنواع	very often	الثب البناء
for about an hour	لمده ساعه بفرس	on the weekend	و عصه بهایه الأسنوع
make something new	بصبع شيئا حديد	find something important	بجد شقً هامً
solve a problem	يحل مشكله	ptay them too much	سعب بهم هره طوينه





- I love playing all kinds of games.

- أنا أحب لعب جميع أبواع الألعاب.
- My favor.te games are v deo games I don't play them very often, though أنعاب الفيديو هي المفضلة لدى، رغم أنى لا ألعبها كثيرًا.
- My favorite games are ones where you build cities
- أفصل الألعاب بالنسبة لي هي تلك التي يمكنك فيها بناء المدي،
- Video games can be a problem when you play them too much
 - يمكن أن تكون ألعاب الغيديو مشكلة عندما تلعبها كثيرًا.



I in nk board games can be fun

سعسر عن سرأي ستحدم I th nk آ

- لتوصيح السبب نستحدم جملة + because.

I ke these games because I can be creative



Look and read:

A description of my favorite game

وصف نلعبة المفضلة لدى

My favorite video game

by Belal

دتبه بلان

I love playing a likinds of games. I play games outside with my friends, and at school we play hopscotch and board games. I also enjoy playing board games with my sister, although⁽¹⁾ she often beats me!

أحمد تعميد حميد أنده الألف بالقيد لألف من لم من أبدائه وقير المن تعد أنه من من أبدائه المدائلة المدائه الما تعد أنها من تماه أنذًا منا تهدارياً



على الرغم من (1)

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an nour on the weekend. It's funt My favorite games are ones where you build cities I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

أهاني المقصدة هي أنعاب تؤييد أن لا ألمها في كثير من الأحيان، عنا أَبِهُ حا ساعة هُندَّ في عطية بها أناس موع إنها متحة أنعاني المصلة هي كانك الدارات. قراضية ، عمادية كبيرة حقُّ استحيام سكتارات العالم وحياتها حيوان. هـ فالألفان أن كالمضاف أن تضور مندغًا وتصلع شائحانيا. (2) دىث

Some of the images in modern video games are amazing I've got a new games console, which I share 3' with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult, but I think they can be fun 4, too, because they're so exciting.

تعلمي الصور في ألعاب الفيائي أحديثة منهلة الشد حصلت على وحدة تحدد أنها يا حسر 6. و وانتي أنا ارتها مع أختى اتستمتع أحتى سعب أنعاب المعامرات حست متلك الدهاب إلى أناك محتلفة للعشور عبى أشاياء هاماة أو حال مشاكلة، يمكن أن تكون صعبة ولكو أغثقاء أنها لمكر أل تكون صعبة ولكو أغثقاء أنها لمكر أل تكون صعبة ولكو أغثقاء أنها لمكر أ ران (3) ممتع (4)

Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

بمكن أن تكون ألعاب القيديو مناطقة عندما تلعيم الثمرًا، ومع بالك، أعنقم أنها يمكن أن اكون العلَّا عندت تعجر شيئا سباءًا أن بشارًا سعرية المكنك غابيًا اللعب مع أصدقائك أ



Lessons 4&



6	Choose	the cor	rect and	wer from	a h	c ord:
The same	CHOOSE	tile coi	terr atts	MEL HOM	a, u,	C, UI d:

- 1	-		
- 1			
- 4			
- 1			
- 4		100	
		24.	
		·	
	-	- 4	٠

Ī	I love	playing	all	****	of	games.
	a) brid	ks		b) kinds		

c) problems

d) plants

2 She plays games

with her friends like hopscotch

a) indoors

b) inside

c) outside

3 My sister always

me when we play together I never win

a) helps

b) beats

c) hates

d) shares

4 You can play video games for about

a) too much b) many hours c) one hour

d) a whole day

5 My favorite games are the ones where I can build cities with different

a) problems

a) bricks

b) sets

b) friends

c) sticks

d) bricks

6 I like games where I can solve

or do something exciting c) problems

d) adventures

7 When you do something new, you are .

a) bored

b) creat ve

c) annoyed

d) unhappy

8 They can go to different

to find important things.

a) kinds

b) places

c) problems

d) plants

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



players - description - hates - likes - square

Nadia loves all kinds of board games. Her favor to board game is cailed "Ludo". Here's a (1) of now you can play t You need two or four (2) play the game Each player has four pieces to move into their home to win. Each player has a different color nome square. Nad'a plays ludo with her friends very often Sne (4) this game because she in nks you need both luck and strategy to win.

Read the text and answer the questions:

Ramy loves playing all kinds of games He plays games outside with his friends, and at school they play hopscotch and board games. Ramy's favorite games are video games. He doesn't play them very often, though He plays for about an hour on the weekend It's fun! His favor te games are ones where he builds a ties. He's made big cities with animals and plants using different bricks. Ramy likes these



games because he can be creative when he plays them Ramy thinks video games can be a problem when you play them too much However, he thinks they can be great when they help you so ve problems or do something exciting

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 It's figure play video games for only one hour.

a) good b) wrong c) unhealthy d) bad

2 The under ined word "solve" means
a) create b) tind a solution c) make d) produce

3 Ramy uses to build cities.

a) animals b) games c) bricks d) plants

Answer the following questions:

- 4 Why does Ramy like games where he can build cities?
- 5 When can video games be great?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



- 1 have a new They got console games.
- 2 with her She friends plays outside.
- 3 enjoys playing games My prother adventure.
- 4 are amazing The images video games in.

Punctuate the following:



nada thinks video games are fun

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:



"Video games"

for about an hour - build cities







Intensifiers

really, so, very:

They're used to give a stronger meaning to the adjective or the verb.

- Salma was very good at hiding.
- I really liked skipping.

quite

Irs used to to make the adjective less strong

He's quite good at playing chess

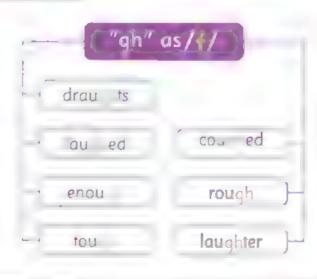
at all:

I's used to strengthen the negative sentences.

- The boy wasn't friendly at all.
- He didn't like hopscotch at all.

Pronunciation

thought drought |bought brought |-



CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



	ر اللعبه		لعبه القطار
	عجيه سريح		יפר יקלה
dua	محسم على شكل شحص		أصعر سأ
	كراء رحام		مقصل
	بعبه لوجيه		عنفري
_	۱ میه عباق		ابح
()			
MAX. ALM	يط الحيل		ملوں
	لعبه لعميضه		صعب
	بعبة المربعاء		ىجىئ
	مشروع		طباشير
	حوده		مرىعات
	حبال		منصقات
	مثير للاهيمام		وافى ركبة
	كسك		ىق
	נג		حصر
	شراع		صحك
	حرطوم الفيل		نح (سعر)
	لعبه الصاوله		ئو
	اشتری		" دشن
	حفاف		عمد
	ألعاب الفيدبو	******	ىدن
	طوب (مكعبات البناء)	4 messesses nements maked this	بدع
	عطلة بهاية الأسوع		. ے وحة تحكم
	عطم		شكله
		**************************************	ماکن
	حيوانات		
	حديث	4	عات المغامرة

بالحارح

THE STATE OF THE S



How to write about your favorite toy in the past:

- I I found a box of my old toys and it was exciting.
- 2 There was a/an + اسم لعبة I loved playing with it.
- 3 I also enjoyed playing with +
- 4 When I was younger, my favorite toy was + اسم لعبة.
- 5 I didn't have a + اسم لعبة, but my sister had + اسم لعبة أخرى

I found a box of my old toys and it was exciting. There was an action figure. I loved playing with it I also enjoyed playing marbles. When I was younger, my favorite toy was the train set. I didn't have a cuddly toy, but my sister had a doll's house.

We both played with t

How to write about games you were good/bad at:

- I I oved all kinds of games
- 2 I was very good at + اسم لعبة.
- 3 I thought + اسم لعنة + was quite good, but I preferred + اسم لعبة آخرى.
- 4 I rea ly enjoyed + اسعر لعبة أو نشاط
- ot مسر لعبة أو نشاط + All الدو I d an't like lenjoy اسم لعبة أو نشاط + all

I oved all kinds of games I was very good of skipping and running I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred playing hide and seek I really enjoyed playing outside with my friends I d an't like or mbing at all

How to write a description of your favorite game:

- What is it called?
- 2 What kind of game is it?
- 3 How often do you play it?
- 4 How do you play it?
- 5 Why do you like it?

My favorite game is called hide and seek. It's a party game that you can play outside with your friends. I play it on the weekena with my cousins. And I play it at school with my friends very often. To play it, to see your eyes, count to ten and run after after players. I like it because I think it's great fun.

STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER



Read and match:



- 2 have a go
- 3 made up

-) try something.
-) thought of or invented.
- c. () be more successful than someone in a game.

Choose the correct word to complete the sentence:

- I (really / very) liked playing with cuddly toys when I was younger.
- 2 I thought action figures were (quite I very) good, but I preferred train sets
- 3 My brother was (very / at a 1) good at football. He always beat me!
- 4 You're (quite / so) good at hide and seek you always nide in the best places!
 - 5 This book is not funny (at all / quite).
 - 6 I (really / very) enjoyed playing marbles with my friends.

Read and complete with the correct form of the verb:

- Amal imagined (fly) in a plane.
- 2 Ghada prefers (play)
- 3 We enjoy (make up)
- 4 My sister stopped (let)
- 5 They finished (paint)

- board games to skipping
- stories for our action figures.
 - me share her doll's house because I broke it
- the posters and tidied up.



Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



- 1 Fares and Dalia visited their in Luxor last week
 (a. Grandpa b. uncle c. aunt a. Grandma)
- 2 Fares was so to see his old toys.

 (a. bored b. sad c. excited d. annoyed)
- 3 Fares loved playing with his ...

 (a. action figures b. doll's house c. skateboard d. rol erblades)
- 4 Dalia had alan They both played with it (a. train set b. action figure c. marbles d. do i's house)





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Nadia wanted to have a on my rollerblades but she couldn't
- a) visit b) go c) box d) figure
- 2 You need to wear . It really hurts if you fall off your skateboard a) train set b) rollerbades c) marbles d) knee pads
- 3 Nour likes to hug her until she falls asleep.
 - a) cuddly toy b) action figure c) dols's house d) marbles
- 4 can go really fast. Be careful when you play with them
 - a) Action figures b) Do l's houses c) Skateboards d) Board games



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

skateboard - making - action - playing - quite

Amina and Nour are best friends. They like to spend their free time in different ways. Amina really likes games that use a of of imagination. She is very good at (1) up stories. She has a do is house, some cadally toys and some (2) figures. Nour really enjoys (3) outside. She liked ranning, climbing, and playing tennis. She was (4) good at handbull, too



Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Most people think that video games are bad for the dren. Its true that video games can be a problem when you play them too much individed, they can be great because they can help you do something that is very reative or exciting. They can



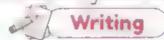
help you play with your friends too. To be safe, you can play video games for about an hour on the weekend or in your free time. There are amazing video games where you can build new cities with different bricks. There are also adventure games where 40, can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem

Choose	the	correct	word	from	a.b.	c.	ori	d:
C11003C	411.00	****	44.04.04		40, 00,	-		-

- The general idea of the text is ".....
 - : Children b, Adventure games c) Video games
- 2 You can play video games on the weekend or in your b) free d) practice a) school
- - b, create samething new c) tired d) sad

Answer the following questions:

- 4 When can video games be a problem?
- 5 Summarize the benefits of video games mentioned in the text.



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 enjoyed with Heba playing figures action.
- 2 favorite Hassan's a train was tou set.
 - 3 have a go on Did you rollerblades your?

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:



good at playing hide and seek. They were (at a l)

Punctuate the following:

rana was quite good at skateboarding

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"A description of my favorite game"

What is it called? - How often do you play it?



















a) Building cities

time









Read and complete the dialog:

skipping - like - Because - really - favorite

Nader: What's yourfree-time game, Ali?

I think hopscotch is quite good but my favorite is

Nader: Why do youit?

I think it's great fun. Do you like skipping?

Nader: Yes, I like it.

Read the text and answer the questions:

When Hana was younger, her favorite toy was her skateboard. Hana loved going to the park and playing with her friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. They all wanted to go so fast! Hana's skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. Hand had to wear a nelmet and knee pads to protect herself. Hana got her first skateboard when she was eight, and it was quite small. She doesn't use it at all now, because she has a bigger one

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I The text is about "
 - a) Hana's friends

- b) Hana's favorite tou
- c) The Park d) Yellow stickers
- 2 Hana's favorite toy was her
 - doil's house cuddly toy

rollerbiades skateboard

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How does Hana protect herself?
- 4 When does Hana get her first skateboard? ...
- 5 Why doesn't Hana use her first skateboard now?

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 often How play does she skipping?
- 2 loved - in the hopscotch play ng park
- 3 found -a box -at-I house -my grandma's.
- 4 at all He like going on skateboards didn't.
- 5 last Did you visit grandma your week?

What's the story? Unit SARAH In Student's Book Unit Overview Exercises By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- · listen and read about Goha and his stories.
- · understand and discuss what makes a good story.
- · use the past continuous.
- ·write the beginning and ending of a short story.
- · listen to a short story about a boy and a wolf.
- use sequencing adverbs.
- · learn how to say words with the sound /w/.
- take part in a cooperative storytelling project.

Dia you

· People have told stories for thousands of years. The Ancient Egyptians "carved pictures to tell stories.

n find it out

My classmates and I know many different children's stories like "Cinderella", "Pinocchio", and "The Frog Prince". The one we like best is "Alice's Adventures in Wonderland".

*corved

متحمثة

سمع وهرأعن حما ولاصطبة

يستجدها المأصي المسامي

نقهم ورافش مأيدهن اهسة حبش

القصة القصيرة.







استمع ومل

Main vocabulary

story	قصة	son	ا اس	review	مراجعة
setting	المكان (للعصة)	countryside	اربف	characters	شخصيات
ending	انبهاية	narrator	لراوي	moral	العبرة (الدرس الأخلاق)

	۵	_							_
3	की की	0	YZ.	DI	0 0	0	(W)	Lo	100
		-					_	-	400

حمار	market	سوق
رحلة	funny (adj.)	مضحك
منعت	both	كلًا من (كلاهما)
دی	great (odj.)	عطيم
أيضًا	details	تفاصيل
مشهور	known (adj)	معروف
السودان	Algeria	الجزائر
المعرب	country	دولة
احلافت	everyone	كل واحد
رئيسى	lesson	درس
ثمر	though	رغمر ذلك
	رحلة منعب دي دي أيضًا مشهور مشهور السودان المعرب احمادات المعرب احمادات رئيسي	المعد funny (adj.) المعد both المعد great (adj.) المال details المعدد known (adj.) المعود Algeria المعرد country المعرد everyone المعدد العدد المعدد العدد المعدد العدد المعدد ا

Conjugation of verbs نصريف الأصحال

	Regular verbs			أفعيبال منتظمية	
Present		Past	Present		Past
carry	يحمل	carried	pass	345	passed
happen	يحدث	happened			
	Irregular verbs			أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
write	يكتب	wrote	ride	يركب	rode
teach	يُعلم	taught	know	يعرف	knew
let	يسمح	let	tell	يخير	told

Expressions and Phrones

take turns	يتبادلون الأدوار	have a turn	لنيه دور
must be	لابد أن (الاستنتاج)	So do I.	وأنا كذلك.
In fact, .	ى الحقيقة	all over the world	ق جميع أنحاء العالم
known by different names	معروف بأسماء محتلفة	for example	على سبيل المثال
the same	نفس الشيء	(be) right about	على حق ق
write about	يكتب عن	(be) known as	معروف ک
agree with	يتفق مع	last part of	الجزه الأخير من
learn from	يتعلم من	take place	يحدث

0

Definitions

characters	the people or animals in a story	الأشخاص أو الحيوانات في ا	a man - h s son - the donkey
ending	the last part of a story	الجره الأنح من القصة	They both carry the donkey!
setting	the time and the place where a story h	appens الوقت والمكان الذي يحدث	the countryside many years ago
moral	the lesson you learn from a story	البرس الدي تتعلمه س الق	You can't make everyone happy
norrator	the person who tells the story	الشحص الدي يروي القصة	Goho

جمل هامة İmportant sentences

A man and his son went to the market on a dankey.

- When the boy rade the donkey, people didn't like it
- When the man rode the donkey, people didn't like it.
- When they both rode the donkey, people didn't like it
- In the ending, they both carried the donkey!

رجل وابنه هغبا إلى السوق على ظهر حمار

- عندما ركب الولد الحمارة لم يسجب الناس بدلك.
- عندما ركب الرجل الحمار، لم يعجب الباس بثلك.
- عندما ركب كلاهما الحمارة لمر يهجب الناس بدلك.
 - في النهاية، حمل الاثنان الحمارا

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Before I buy a book, I read a (lesson deta ourney review) about it
- 2 "Cinderella" is the main (setting place character narratar) in the story.
- 3 Uncle Adel has a (girl daughter son wife) called Hassan.
- 4 Pizza is very (popular clever funny main) in Italy.
- 5 Dad works for 10 hours a day He is always (happy funny clever fixed) after work.
- 6 My uncle has a farm in the (city mountain river countryside).

Listen, read, and role-play:

،سمع، امرأ، وتبادن الأدوار



What are you doing, Lama?

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters—the man and his son—take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the ending of the story, they both carry the donkey!





Haha! His stories are both funny and clever, aren't they?

Yes, they are. He's a great narrator, too. I love the details he gives about the characters, the setting, and everything that happens.





So do I. In fact, his stories are popular all over the world. But he's known by different names. For example, in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha.

Are the stories the same in every country?





There are some differences, but they all have a moral that Goha wants to teach us. What do you think is the moral of this story?

هناك بعيض الافتلافات، لكن حميعها لديها معرى يريد جحا أن يعلمنا يهاه، ما رأيك في سفيري من

هده القصا

That you can't make everyone happy.

الله لا يعكنك إسطاد الجميع.





I think Goha is right about that!

أنا أعتقد أن جحا على حق في ذلك،

Me, too. I'm happy that I know which story to write about, though!

أَن يضَ أَنَا سَعِيدَةَ لِأَنِّي أَعْرَفُ أَي قُصَةً سَأَنْتِ عَنهِ، رَعُم دَسَا



Language Notes

Expressing agreement:

التعبير عن الاتفاق:

So do I / Me, too.

وأَدُ أَبِضًا.

e g: A: I love chocolate.

B: So do I./ Me, too.

Asking for agreement with the "question tag":

طلب الموافقة باستخدام «السؤال المديل» بمعنى «أليس كذلك» :

Aff rmative sentence, + (negative short question)?

سدما تكون الجملة مثلثة، يكون أأنسؤال أنمدين مثقى

H's stories are both funny and clever, aren't they?

Negative sentence, + (affirmative short question)?

A i d dn't come to school yesterday, did he?



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- I love ice cream. (1)
- . 100

- 2 I like fruits, (Also)
- do I
- 3 They are friends, (are) they?
- 4 They didn't take the bus to school, (do)

they?



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding Applying Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

D	4	Listen and circle	the correct ansi	wer from a, b, c, or d:	6
, .	-	The narrator is	the countryside the countryside the countryside thing — c. ending main charge — c. four — d. fivou can't make pe	, many years ago.	
,,,	C	hoose the correct a	answer from a, l	b, c, or d:	8
	2 3 4 5	The last part of a s a) moral The lesson you lear a) review The person who tell a) character	b) setting b) turns tory is the b) setting n from a story is b) journey s the story is the b) narrator where a b) place	c) beginning jears ago. c) place c) beginning the c) moral c) son a story happens is the so c) people nswer in the class.	d) ending d) ending d) ending d) man setting. d) animals d) from
	8	You are right. I	_		N
		a) tell		c) write	d) agree
	R			ne words in the box:	4
	pe Wi	writing a review of (1). With his so ople didn't like it. W	one of Gona's sto on and a donkey hen the man ride donkey, people s	nkey - boy - man r'es. The one about a m . When the .(2) es the (3) , say the donkey must be	rides the donkey, people didn't like it.

Read the text and answer the questions:

5

My name is Lama, and I like reading the most. My favorites are Goha's stories. I'm writing a review of one of his stories, the's a great narrator. I love the details he gives about the characters, the setting, and everything that happens. Gona's stories are popular all over the world. But he's known by different names. For example, in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha. His stories aren't the same. There are some differences, but they all have a that Goha wants to teach us.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Lama likes the most.

writing reading playing swimming

2 Lama is writing a review of alan

science book accident story adventure

3 The word "moral" means from the story.

a) a place b) a lesson c) a character d) a name

Answer the following questions:

- 4 Why is Goha a great narrator?
- . What are Goha's different names all over the world?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

Δ

- 1 Lama are doing, What you?
- 2 popular the world His stories all are over.
- 3 known names different Goha by is.
- 4 are His and clever funny stories.

Punctuate the following:

2

- I you can't make everyone happy.
 - are the stories the same in every country



رسالة فم زجاجة





Listen and say:

استمع ومن

Main vocabulary	
-----------------	--

message	رسالة	bottle	رحاحه (عبوه	beginning	بداية
trash	قمامة	paper	ورقه	event	ధినికా

Extra vocabular

quiet (adj.)	هادئ	beautiful (odj.)	جميل	granddad	حد
idea	فكرة	someone	شخص ما	USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمربكية
space	القصاء	note	ملحوظة	text message	رسالة بصية
path	344	suddenly	فجأة	scared (odj.)	خالف
forest	غابة	newspaper	جريدة	journalist	صحفي

Conjugation of verbs الأمعال

افعال منتظمة Regular verbs

Present		Past	Present		Post
fold	يطوي	folded	surf	يركب الأمواج	surfed
email	يراسل (بالإيميل)	emailed	pass	يمر	passed
describe	يصف	described	follow	يتبع	followed

أفعال غير منتظمة İrreqular verbs

Present		Past	Present		Past
write	يكتب	wrote	find	يجد	found
give	يعطى	gave	read	يقرأ	read
tell	يبغي	told	grow up	يكبر	grew up
forget	ينسي	forgot	send	يرسل	sent
shine	يشرق	shone			

Expressions and Shreses

by the sea	بجانب البحر	One day,	دات پوم
a piece of paper	ورقة	throw out to sea	يرمن في البحر
back at the house	عودة للسرل	came in	دخل
the next day	ق اليوم التالي	throw into	يرون 🐽 🐧
many years passed	مرت سنوات عديدة	walk his dog	ويمشى كلبه
arrive home	يصل للمزل	come home	يعود للمن
the start of	البداية لـ ,	hope to see	آمل أن أرى
walk along the path	يمثى إلى جانب الطريق	in the distance	من بعيد
a bit scared	خاتف إلى حد ما	score goal	يسجل هدف
		T	



Tom's grandparents - ved by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed, and played games on the sand. One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water "Look, Grandaad," he so 1 "Let's put it in the trash."

"I have a better idea," said Granddad "cet's write a message in a bottle."

عش أجداد الوم يحالب للحور كان تشاطل بأنقاب من متربهم هائيًّا وحليقًا، وكان يجب للاهاب معهم إلى هناك القد سيحوا والنوا الأعواء العرالية المالية الأعواد العرالية الله الله المالية الأعواد العرالية الله الله المالية الإعواد العرالية المالية الم

ادات پوس کانوا پښتجوال هي انتجو عندغا رُاو کوم عنواد جاجية هي اعتمارک پر مانظر پا جنديه، فاتيد الصحي هي سنڌ انتهيه ١٠٠٠. اگار انجياز هايرو افتورگ گونين کان داعد کانون ادار قاهي ادار څه

"What's a message in a bottle?"

"You write a message on a piece of paper, foid the paper, and put 't in the bottle, it en throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find."

Back at the house, Granddad washed the glass bottle and gave form a pen and a piece of paper. Tom was writing his message when Grandma came in the room.

"What are you doing, Tom?" asked Grandma.



عدها برسالة على ورفقة قبر تندياي بورقة وتصنعها في برد حقة ثم ترمى برداجة في بنجر بيحدها شخص آجاء عند عودته إلى المبريء فتم الحد بعسن الرحاحة وأصطل تومر فيشا وي فقة كان توما يكتب اسالته عندما باخدات الحداقي، المدافة هناك تقمل بالنوم كه سألت بجدة. أحدد تهمل «أنا أكتب بسابة في احداقه، فقد التاليل فرادتها ته

Hellol

My name's Tom Tin. 11 years old and Tin from the USA. My favorite things are space, animals, and the color blue

What are your favorite things? Please email back to tell me! My email address is tom@beachnet usa

From Tom

مرحيًا ا سفي تومر عفري 11 سبة وأند من نوديات بمنجمة بأمريسة بأثباء بصفيفة بدي في نفيمه و بحبوبات و بيار داره ما هي الرئيبة المصفلة لذيك " ترجاء أبن برسانة إنتيارية بتحدير الريدي م حدود هو 158 et 158 et 158 et 158 - 1 الراجه

The next day, form and his grandparents went to the beach to throw the bottle into the sea.

Many years passed, and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message. In a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message...

مرت ستونت للديدة، وكير اتوم، سي هو وأحداده الحسالة المدخودة في الجدجة، وفي أحد الأرماء كال تومر يعمل عسم أسر اله حدة رسالة،





Language focus

زمن الماضي المستمر The Past Continuous Tense

We use the past continuous tense in stories to say what was happening at a particular time in the past.

I/ He/ She/ It/ اسم مغرد | was + (inf مصدر الفعل + ing) You/ We/ They/ مصدر الفعل + was + (inf مصدر الفعل + ing)

Yesterday afternoon, John was walking his dog.

Ola and I were playing computer games yesterday morning.

ex. ye

اسم معرد Hel Shel Itl	wasnt	(= f , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
اسم جمع You/ We/ They/	werent	(inf + مصدر الفعل + ing) +	

Amira wasn't reading yesterday evening.

They weren't sleeping at 8 yesterday.

Yes/No Guestion

السؤال :Question

Was	I/ he/ she/ it/	(106
Were	wel theyl you!	? (Inf. مصدر الفعل + Ing)

Was Ali studying for his exams last night?

Answer: الإجابة

es,	authinas (was/were	
10,	subject ()	wasn trweren't	

Was she writing in her book?

B: Yes, she was.

Were the children p ay ng footbal yesterday evening?

B No, they weren t.

Wh- questio

Wh-word	was		(not 1 11 no)	7
كلمة الإستعهام	were	subject ()	(۱ng + مصدر الفعل ۱ng) +	

What was she doing at 6 am yesterday?

B: She was having breakfast.

What were you doing yesterday evening?

B: I was studying.

- al (aay/ morning/ evening/ night) yesterday
- 2 at (6, 7, 8, ... o'clock/ am/ pm) yesterday

E

Choose the correct answer:

We (are were was - s) doing our homework yesterday at 4 o'clock

- 2 (Was Were Are Does) she making a sandwich?
- 3 The dogs (wasn't isn't weren't aren't) sleeping in the garden yesterday evening
- 4 I (was cooked was cooking cooked cooks) lunch yesterday at 6 o'clock
- 5 We (were weren't was wasn't) playing football yesterday morning. We were studying
- 6 They were (makes making made makes) a cake yesterday at 7 o'clock
- 7 What (is were was are) you doing at 9 pm yesterday?
- 8 She (am was s were) riding her bike yesterday at 11 o'clock
- 9 You were playing the piano (yesterday evening tomorrow morning next week next year).

Were you drinking juice? B Yes, (you were I was she was - was I)

We can also use the past continuous with (when) and the past simple to show when one action interrupted another in the past.

The children were playing in the park when momical ed them out



When my dad came home, I was reading a book.

Choose the correct answer:

- When I (comes coming came to come) back from town, mom was cooking tunch
- . I (took was taking s taking takes) my dog for a walk when suddenly another dog attacked it.
- (What When Where Which) I was walking in the town, I met an old friend
- Fatima was doing her homework when she (gets got get getting, a text message from her friend.
- When the teacher took a photo of us, we (climb climbs was climbing were climbing up the tree.
- We (are were is was) eating lunch in the cafeteria at noon
- I was (walked walks walk waking) home when I saw the car accident
- My classmate and I (was s were are) studying together at the library
- What (ore were s was) you doing at one ocock? B I was sleeping
- Adham (was wasn't were werent) doing his homework, he was playing with his friends.
- What was he (do does dd dc rg) when you v stred h m?
- I I wasn't watching TV when you (cang cased) me



Lesson 2



Remembering • Understanding Applying Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

	Cł	noose the correct an	swer from a, l	o, c, or d:	8
		I sent a			
		a) present	b) message	c) letter	d) paper
		Don't drop			
		a) trash	b) notes	c) event	d) home
		My grandparents live	ed .	the sea. The bed	ich is near their house.
		a) on	b) in	c) by	d) for
		He wrote the messag	e and	the bottle ou	t to the sea.
		followed	passed	threw) emailed
*/	5	He likes to	when he g	oes to the sea.	
		a) describe	b) surf	c) shine	d) run
		My birthday is alan	t	hat happens every	year.
		beginning	message	event	a) ending
		Tom was	his message	when grandma o	ame into the room.
		a) writes	b) writing	c) write d) wrote
		He wrote his teacher			
		a) loaf	b) piece	c) slice	d) bottle
r	R	ead and complete ti	he text with th	e words in the b	oox:
				- bottle - message	
	Or	ne day, Tom was swimn	ning in the sea w	hen he saw a glass	bottle in the water It was
	а	(1) in a bottl	e. Granddad ha	d an (2).	to write one. He told Tom
	ho	w to do it. He writes a	message on a	piece of (3).	, folds the paper and
			-		or someone else to find.
	P	ut the words in the	correct order	to make sentend	es:
ï	1	lived - Tom's - sea -	- the - by - gr	andparents.	
l					
ı		beach - beautiful -	quiet c	ind — was.	
l					4 +1 +
0		write - bottle - in -	- a - a m	essage.	
					+ +> +> +F
		the bottle tl	he sea into	threw.	

				Wildl 5 tile 5	tory!
Rea	nd and write the cor	rect form of th	e word(s) bet	ween brackets:	14
1 1	My pet cat (feed)	her kit	tens at 6 pm i	jesterday.	
. A	Au (doesn't)	studying En	glish yesterda	y morning,	
3 (Was) A	ya and Nour pla	ying in the po	irk yesterday morn	ung?
4 A	At seven o'clock, Hand	(do)	her home	work.	
5 Y	esterday morning, the	y were (c imb)	1	he mountain	
	lana (ısn't)	studying at a	eight last nighi		
, V	What (you were)	doing	gesterday ever	ning?	
5]	It was my friend's birt	hday party We	were (s ng)	and do	inc'na
9 H	He (run)	when he fell do	wn.		
υV	When they (see)	a dolph	in, they were	swimming.	
1 (What) t	he light went out	, he was stud	ying.	
2 I	was (walk)	home when	I saw Ali.		
JI	was doing my homev	vork (where)	mı	mom called	
	was reading a book			, a noise outsid	de.
	ectuate the followin		v		
					2
1 1	what is a message in	a bottle			
2	Let s put it in the trash	1			
Writ elen	te a text of about FI nents:	FTY (50) words	using the fo	ollowing guiding	5
		"A day on the	beach"		7
	Where were yo	u? On the	beach		
	What were you		valking with my f	riends.	
			-		



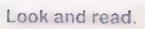
Listen and sa	ıy:		استمع ومَل:
	Main vo	cabulary	
sheep	حروف / حرفان	shepherd	الراعي (راعي الماشية)
villager	ع روی	wolf	ذئب
	Exterio Vo	cobulary	
once	ذات مرة	hill	J
grass	عشب	lonely (adj)	حيد
bored (adj)	رهقان	villagers	لقرويون
tools	أدوات	joke	رحة
suddenly	فحأة	real (odj)	تغيمى
scared (adi)	خائف	untrue (adj.)	ير حقيقي

		agation or	التساديسي وقيقه	Landau.	The state of the same of
	Regular verbs		4	أفعسال متبتقسا	
Present	_	Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	rest	يستريح	rested
shout	يصرخ	shouted	wait	ينتظر	waited
save	38.4	saved	laugh	يضحك	laughed
reach	يصل إلى	reached	appear	يظهر	appeared
	rregular verbs			أفحال غير منتظمة	
Present	•	Past	Present		Past
lie	يستلقى	lay	understand	يعهم	understood

	Expressions	and Phrases	
work alone as	یعمل بمفرده کی ,,,	look after	پهتنی د
worry about	يقلق بشأن	put down	يصع أرضًا
tell the truth	يغول الحفيقة	waste time	يصيع الوهت
last day of the week	اليوم الأخير من الأسبوع	He was sorry	کان آسفًا

Versions Check

ر يتحول الفعل (le) بمعني «يرقد/بستلقي» إلى (١٩١١g) عبد إضافة الـ (ng)).



انظر وامرأ

Once, there was a boy called Peter who lived in a village. He worked alone as a snepherd looking after sheep. Every day, he took the sheep up the hill and rested while the sheep ate the delicious grass.

One day, Peter was lying on the grass watching his sheep. He felt lonely and bored and decided to have some fun. First, he shouted, "Wolf! There's a wolf!" to the villagers in the field below: Next, he lay down and waited. The villagers were busy working, but they were worried about Peter's sheep, so they put down their tools and ran to save them.

بعس ، لكنهم كانيا قامير الله

They reached the top of the hill, hot and tired. They saw Peter. He was lying under a tree and he was laughing. There is no wolf! It was a joke!" he said. The villagers were very angry and said, "Peter, you must tell the truth!" After that, they left Peter and went back to work

Then. Peter did the same thing again later that week. The villagers were very angry, "Peter, you mustn't waste our time! We're very busy!" they said.

Finally, on the last day of the week, Peter was with his sheep at the top of the hill when suddenly a real wolf appeared. Peter was very scared and climbed a tree. He called and called for someone to help him, but no one arrived. The wolf killed and ate the sheep Peter understood why no one came, and he was very sorry.

Who is the main character in the story?

Why were the villagers very angry?

Moral! الدرس الأخلاقيا

If you tell untrue stories many times, no one will believe you



Sequencing adverbs ā.

الأحوال التسلسلية

We use sequencing adverbs to say when things happen. They help us to understand the order of events. This makes the text easier to follow.

الناس العالم الولا المال الما

"The Boy Who Cried a Wolf"

- Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an idea.
- First, he shouted, "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep.
- Next, he said there was no wolf and it was a joke
- d. Then, Peter did it again.
- e After that, the villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time
- · Finally, a real wolf came. It are the sheep. Peter was very sorry.

How to write a story using sequencing adverbs:

كيفية كتابة قصة باستحدام الأحوال التسلسلية:

First, plan your story, and decide what it will be about.

أولًا: خطط لقصتك وقرر ما الذي سوف تكتب عنه.

Next, write a first draft of your story.

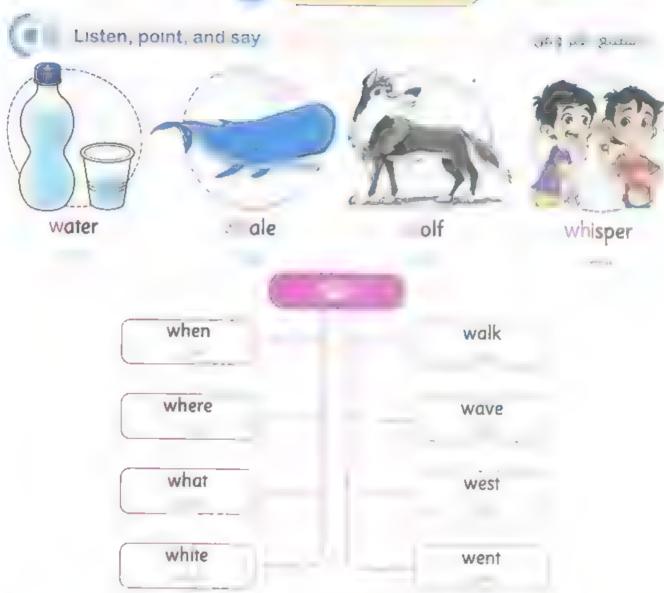
ثانيًا: اكتب مسودة أولية للقصة.

After that, check and correct your spelling and grammar

بعد دلك: راجع وصحح الهجاء والقواعد اللعوية.

Finally, share it with friends and enjoy.





التشديد Stress

The way in which a part of a word is emphasized more than the other parts while speaking.

When a word has a prefix, the prefix usually isn't stressed.

عنما سمور الله على الالتم علية الالتم السيد عبر

If the base word has one syllable, the stress is on the base word.

1933 . الأكليم الأسماد الوريد مقطع باسد، يثم الدمامر بل عاكامه

re-*send
dis-*
in-*doors
un-*hap-py
re-*;
in- cor-*rect
un-*h-dy
dis-a-*gree



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

0	4	Listen and ci	rcle the correct	answer from a, b,	c, or d:	6
	ī	Nada loves				
				reading – d. p aying	g tennis)	
	2	Yesterday, Nac		and a second of second	2011	
	2	Sami worked		inglish book – d. st	ngi	
	9		- b. farmer — c. v	et d. teacher)		
	4	· ·	マール・マース マー・マー・マー・マー・マー・マー・マー・マー・マー・マー・マー・マー・マー・マ			
		(a. works -b.	tels the truth	c. eats — d. lies)		
h	-	hoose the cor	rect answer fror	na b c ord:		
-		My father wo		He looks af	er sheen	5
					d) villager	
			b) shepherd		d) village.	
	2		deo,		d) roplay	
			b) untidy	c) incorrect	d) replay	
	3	The boy saw a	real wolf, so he			
		a) rested	b) lived	c) waited	d) shouted	
	Ą	Omar didn't re	ceive my massag	e. I must	It.	
ı		a) replay	b) resend	c) dislike	d) whisper	
ı		То таке а сл	p of tea,	you have to bo	il the water	
ı		a) next	b) finally	c) first	d) then	
D	R	ead and comp	olete the text wi	th the words in th	e box:	4
			Then - Next - F	inally — First — After	that	
	Н	eres how to mal	ke lemonade	(1) , slice the le	mons in half to get th	e juice
	OU	t (2)	, put some wate	r in a jug, <mark>and add</mark> le	mon juice to the water	
	(3)	, ada som	e sugar and stir it	. (4) , pour	it in a cup, and enjor	y your
	les	monada				



Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Joudy I'm in grade six. My favorite hobby is reading stories. Yesterday, I read a story about a boy called Peter. Peter worked as a shepherd. On a boring day, he had an idea to have some fun He shouted, "Wolf"! All the villagers put down their tools and ran to save him. He laughed and said, "It was a joke" The villagers were very angry. One day, a real wolf appeared, and Peter called and called for someone to help, but no one arrived. The wolf are the sheep. Peter understood why no one came.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about
 - a) a game b) a story
- c) a book
- d) leaflet

Peter's job is to look after

a) It's true

- a) children b) students
- c) sheep
- d) villagers
- The underlined word "Joke" in the passage means "

b) It's untrue

- - c) It's a lesson
- d) It's a party

Answer the following questions:

- 4 Why were the villagers angry?
- 5 Summarize the moral of the story.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 decided Peter have some to fun.
- 2 killed ate The and wolf the sheep.
- were villagers very The angry.
- worried about Peter's The were sheep villagers.



Punctuate the following:



peter worked as a shepherd



writing & Project



The ending of a story

نهاية القصة



Listen and say:

اسلمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

ending	الحاتمة (بهاية القصة)	reply	ا رد
coast	ساحل	sailing	الإدحار
boat	فارب	excited (adj.)	متشوق

Extre-vecabatar

France	فرنسا	Biarritz	بياريتز (اسعر مدينة في فرنسا)
mangoes	مانجو	welcome (adj.)	مرحب په
plane	طائرة		

تعريف الأفعال Conjugation of verbs

	Regular verbs			أفعيال منتظمية	
Present	,	Past	Present		Past
believe	بصدق	believed	travel	يساهر	traveled
ìaugh	يصحك	laughed	reply	يرد	replied
· ·	Irregular verbs		1	أفحال غير منتظمة	
Present	+	Past	Present		Past
forget	ينس	forgot	find	غجو	found
tell	پخبر	told	feel	يشعر	felt

Expressions and Phrases

decide to	يقرر أن	many years passed	سنوات عديدة مرت
grew up	کبر	forgot about	تسى بخصوص
a reply to	رد علی	sailing my boat	الإنجار بقاري
with best wishes	مع أطبب تمساق	a really long way	طريق طويل جدًّا
later that evening	ق وقت لاحق هذا المساء	That's a great idea!	هده فكرة عطيمة!
let's go by plane	لتذهب بالطائرة	make sure	يتأكد



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Many years passed, and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message.

مرث سبوت عديدة وكبر دوم ، سي هو وأحداده الرسالة الموجودة في الزجاجة، وفي أحد الأيام ، كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسائة ،

Tom, you won't believe it! We have a reply to our message in a bottle!

ومايل بصروا كالباب على ساتك في يعجبه

That weekend, Tom went to his grandparents' house "A woman in France found the message," said Granddad. "Look, here is her reply."

في زياية هذا الأسوع، فهب اللي منزل أ

+ 0

Frem Rose

To Tom

Hello Tom.

My name is Rose and I live in Biarritz, France I live on the coast and I love sailing my boot. Lost week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water—your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.

I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat mangaes, and the color green. You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!

With best wishes,

Rose

هي بياريتر ، فردينا. أعيش على السحل وأحب الإيجار بعارين. في الأسبوع الماضي، كيب أنجر عندما رأيب شبكً ما في الماه - رسالتك في رجاجه! وهذا يعتي أنها

بحثًا بك جدُّ بلحصور برباريي في فرنسا يومًا م

March Calaba

Tom was very excited "Wow, our message traveled a really long way!"

Later that evening, Tom was writing something when Granddod came into the room

"What are you doing, Tom?"

"I'm writing to Rose."

"Why, are you going to visit her?"

"You and I are both going to visit her!"

"That's a great idea," laughed Grandaad "But it's a long way, so let's go by plane"

E 27 21 45 000

Tip! A good ending tells you what hoppens to the characters and tow the, fee, at the end of the story



Lessons 4 & 5



Remembering • Understanding Applying Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

C	hoose the corr	ect answer fr	om a, b, c, or d:		5
	The	tells you w	that happens at the e	end of the story.	
	a) beginning	b) ending	c) character	d) moral	
	I need to send	a	to Ahmed's messag	ge on email.	
	a) present	b) book	to Ahmed's message c) bottle when they wo	d) reply	
	The team was	really	when they wo	n the match.	
	a) angry	b) worried	c) excited	d) loud	
9			trip on water.		
	a) boat	b) plane	c) bus	··. d) bike	
			come to my birthdo		
	a) long	b) far	c) funny ·	d) welcome	
•			of my favorite water		
	a) Cycling	b) Diving	c) Swimming	d) Sailing	
R	ead and comp	lete the text	with the words in t	he box:	A
	•				7
		reply - Grando	lad — boat — excited —	роше	
(4).	woman in France and decide	e found the mes	sage and sent a	ly to the message in a bo	
R	lead the text a	nd answer the	e questions:		5
H	lello Ali,				
ir y Y to V	ny boat. Last we n a bottle! This ro our favorite thin	ek, I was sailing neans it traveled gs. My favorite come to come o	when I saw somethin over 5,435.23 kilom things are my boat, m	on the coast and I love so g in the water—your me leters. I enjoyed reading of nangoes, and the color gr and one day! I'm really ex	ssage about reen.
-					
			ver from a, b, c, or o	:	
	1 Jane lives				
	a) road	b) cod	ist c) beach	d) ship	

2				What's the sto
		•	-	
	a) Jane	b) Ali	-, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -	d) Grandparer
3	Jane found a .			
	a) boat	b) coast	c) bottle	d) ship
10	Answer the	ioliowing que	stions:	
+	Which country	does Jane live	e in?	
0	How long did	the message in	a bottle travel?	* ** ** (**/*) **/**
Put	the words in ti	ne correct ord	ler to make senten	ces:
	it - over - This -	- kilometers —	6,000 - traveled - n	neans.
. a	ibout - Tom - th	e message – a	bottle - in - forgot.	A 44) es () mm y) m terrollected telloclodio
2 n	ne - to - You - 1	welcome — are	- visit - very!	(**************************
			•#	
· ir	n — A woman —	message — the	 France – found. 	
**	*!YEPY!!P4DEGIeGPAGIAGPAAIAG/eA/AA **		+40+40+4104164 mb 66 mm 761 m hmm mm m/ mm yyy	***************************************
Pun	ctuate the folk	owing:		
Who	at are you doing	, tom		
- 177174		TY (50) words	using the following	
Writ	re an email of Fir			guiding elements:
Writ	te an email to y		to tell him about y	our favorite things.
Writ	te an email to y	your email add		our favorite things.
Writ	te an email to y	your email add	to tell him about y	our favorite things.
Writ	te an email to y e is Essam and il is granddad@	your email add	to tell him about y	our favorite things.
Write	te an email to y e is Essam and il is granddad@	your email add	to tell him about y	our favorite things.
Write name email	te an email to y e is Essam and il is granddad@	your email add	to tell him about y	our favorite things.
Write nam emai	te an email to y e is Essam and il is granddad@	your email add	to tell him about y	our favorite things.
Write nam emai	te an email to y e is Essam and il is granddad@	your email add	to tell him about y	our favorite things.
Write nam emai	te an email to y e is Essam and il is granddad@	your email add	to tell him about y	our favorite things.





Vocabulary

Language Focus



When Past simple to show when one action interrupted another in the past.

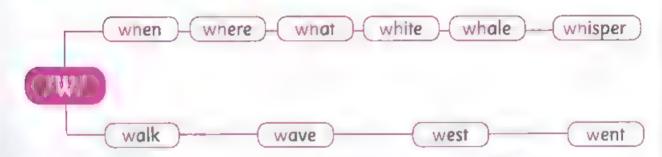
Post continuous.

When Past simple to the part when mon called them out.

Past continuous.

Past simple to the part when mon called them out.

Pronunciation



التشديد Stress

The way in which a part of a word is emphasized more than the other parts while speaking

الطرافة التي يتم يها اسأكيد على نطق حروص الكلمة أكثر من الأجزاء الأخرى أثناه التحديث،

When a word has a prefix, the prefix usually isn't stressed

ه المال المالة على المالة على المالة على المالة الله المالة

re-"send	
dis-*like	
in- doors	
un *nop-py	
re-*pay	
In cor tret	
un-*1-dy	
dis-a-*qree	





time 1			
1+1+1+141411411411411414141414141414141	ابن		قصة
***************************************	شحصيات		مراحعة
71 107VI 01 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 101 11 1	المكان (القصة)		الريف
V ~ V «?«!«???«!«!«!«!»!!»!!»!!»!»	الراوي	7+1 1 + +	العبرة (الدرس الأحلاقي)
******* ******** ********* ***	تفاصيل	• •	البهاية
2			
	رجاجة (عبوة)		بداية
1019 WIX WIX 2	غالس		حدث
* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	ورقة	+ + + + + +	قمامة
*1*** *1*1*1*1*1*1*1*1*1*1*1*1*1*1*1	شاطئ		الأجداد
******************	فكرة		هادئ
	رسالة نصية		الفضاء
* * */*!*/*!*!*!*!****** *br r ***	غباذ	. ,	ممر
(11141) * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	جميل		حائف
Lee n 3			
	الراعي (راعي الماشية)		خروف / حرفان
	ذئب		قروی
A =441= = =	تل		ذات مرة
+/ 10 01////////////////////////////////	وحيد		عشب
* * ***** * * *	أدوات		القرويون
*1711171111010101+1+1+1+1+1+1+1 1+1 1	نفس الشيء		مرحة
	حقبقى		ع جاة
4 4 8 6	9		
151-1-1-1111 101-1111111111 1 1-1-1-1	رد		الخاتمة (نهاية القصة)
* ****** *** ** * * * * * * * * * * * *	الإنجار		ساحل
	متشوق		قارب
	فربسا		بياريتز (اسم مدينة في فرنسا)
	مرحب به		طاثرة

WRITING TIME



How to write about your favorite story:

- My favorite story is + (اسعر القصة).
- The characters are + (اسماء الشخصيات).
- It takes place in + (مكان الأحداث).
- The story is about + (احداث القصة).
- In the ending, + (أحداث النهابة).

My favorite story is "Goha and the Donkey". The characters are Goha, his san, and the donkey. It took place in the countryside. The story is about the man and his son, who take turns riding the donkey. But people weren't happy with anyone riding the donkey.

In the ending, they both carry the donkey!

How to write a story:

- · Where were you?
- · Who were you with?
- · What time of the day?
- What was the weather like?
- What were you doing?
- What did you find?

My brother Ali and I were on the beach near our grandparents' house. It was early in the morning. The weather was lovely, and the sun was shining. We were swimming in the sea when suddenly we found a glass bottle in the water. There was a piece of paper in the bottle. We took the bottle to our grandparents to open it.

How to write a story using sequencing adverbs:

- First, + (الحدث الأول).
- o Next, + (الحدث الثاني).
- Then, + (الحدث الذي يليه)
- After that, + (الحدث الذي يليه).
- ه Finally, + (الحدث الأخير).

Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an idea. First, he shouted, "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep. Next, he said there was no wolf and it was a joke. Then, Peter did it again. After that, the villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time. Finally, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

0	Complete the sentences	with the	words from	the box
---	------------------------	----------	------------	---------

The of the story is kindness is everything

The main was a bit boring — I didn't like him.

The is the person who tells you the story.

In the , we find out why he was sad.

The is London in 1965.

Complete the sentences with the past continuous or past simple form of the verbs in brackets:

character - ending - moral - narrator - setting

Fatima (do) her homework when she (get)

a text message from her friend.

Ghada and I (play) computer games when rer brother

(arrive) home.

I (not watch) TV when you (call) me.

you (look) at your phone when

I (see) you in the street?

Write sentences using the words, the past continuous and the past simple:

hel play! when! his mom! arrive home

we! travel! to the city! when! Grandma! call us

they! listen! to music! when! the man! shout

you! study for your exam! when! the car! stop! outside

Test yoursell 30

UNIT 9





Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



- 1 My favorite story is "Goha and the".

 (a. Horse b. Goat c. Donkey d. Camel)
- 2 It took place in the
 - (a. desert b. sea c. forest d. countryside)
- The characters are Goha, his , and the donkey. (a. friend b. son c. daughter d. wife)
- People weren't with anyone riding the donkey.

 (a. happy b. excited c. sad d. right)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



- The is the last part of the story.
 - a) beginning b) ending c) setting d) event
- The person who tells the story is called the
 - a) narrator b) character c) review d) countryside
 - The from the story is that you can't make everyone happy.
- a) event b) moral c) journey d) details

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



forest - path - sun - hungry - moon

My friend Ali and I were playing in the ... (1)... yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the 22 was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the ... (3) ... when we saw a little dog. It was (4)...... and sick. We decided to help it and take it home.

Read the text and answer the questions:



One day, Tom was swimming in the sea when he saw a glass bottle in the water. He thought it was trash and wanted to throw it in the bin. But Granddad told him it was a message in a bottle. Granddad started to teach Tom how to write a message in a bottle. First, he writes a message on a piece of paper. Next, he folds the paper and puts it in the bottle. After that, you throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find. Tom was happy and decided to write one.

Choose the correct ans	wer from a, b, c, or d:
The main idea of the no	ssone is

a) Tom

b) Granddad

c) the sea d) the message n a bottle

2 Tom wasin the ending.

a) afraid

b) worried

c) angry

d) happy

3 The word "one" refers to the

a) bottle

b) message

c) paper

d) trash

Answer the following questions:

4 What did Tom find in the water?

5 How to write a message in a bottle?







went to - Last week, - house - grandparents' - his - Tom.

the stories - Are - country - in - every - the same?

Geha - in - Gona - known - Sudan - as - is





I I was walking home when I (meet)

What (aid)

you doing yesterday afternoon?

Punctuate the following:



youssel's dad is sending the message

Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:



"The message in a bottle"

What is a message in a bottle? - How do you write it?









Read and complete the dialog:

son - countryside - review - setting - characters

	Ma	om : What are you doing, Lama?					
	Lama: I'm writing a of the story "Goha and his Donkey"?						
	Мо	om: What is the of the story?					
	Lai	ma: It takes place in the					
	Mo	om : Who are the?					
	Lai	ma: They are Goha, his, and the d	onkey.				
2	R	ead and circle the odd one out:					
		market – countryside – village – walk	()				
	2	Sudan - Morocco - Algeria - journey	()				
	3	When - were - Where - What	()				
	4	setting - character - moral - funny	()				
	5	write — find — travel — bottle	()				
3	Re	eorder the words to make correct sentences:					
Ī		son - the market - Goha - his - to - and - went.					
			// */**/**				
		known — Goha — as — in — Jawha — is — Algeria.					

	3	can't - everyone - make - You - happy.					
		ADDITION OF A STATE OF	II-4124124124124124124124144 6v vv sjiselbell				
	4	quiet - beautiful - was - and - The beach.					
	5	things - What - favorite - your - are?					
		, ,					

MARCH MONTHLY TEST







Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(a. sea - b. lake - c. river - d. mountain)

2 The beach near their house was and beautiful. (a. busy - b. quiet - c. loud - d. crowded)

When Jane was visiting her grandparents, she suggested going to the (a. park - b. club - c. library - d. beach)

Jane found a . . . with a message inside it. (a. boat - b. box - c. bottle - d. bag)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



The country controlled money and produced goods through a system called

a) weapons

b) trade

c) metals

d) economy

You need to draw some squares to play

a) hide and seek

b) hopscotch

c) skipping

d) running

The of a story is what the narrator wants to teach us.

a) setting

b) characters

c) ending

d) moral

I love playing with They are small balls, that can go really fast.

a) board games b) skateboard

d) cuddly toy

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



figures - imagination - rollerblades - stickers - making

When Youssef was younger, his favorite toy was the doll's house. He loved taking it to the garden of the house and playing with it for a long time. It was big and blue all over it. Youssef liked games where he can use his with yellow .. (1). . . .(2) That's why he enjoyed playing with his action(3) He was really good at . (4). up new games for them all the time.

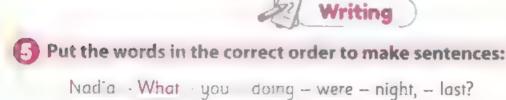
Read the text and answer the questions:



Good morning and welcome to the Museum of Ancient History. I'm Mr Tarek and I will be your guide today. As you can see around you, we have many artifacts that belong to the Ancient Egyptians. One reason is the climate. Here in Egypt, we have a hot, dry climate that helps preserve the artifacts in good condition. On your right, you can see the mask of Tutankhamun. It's made of pure gold with blue lines between gold

nnes. Ancient Egyptians liked using gold, not only because it is valuable, but also because it is durable. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Mr Tarek is our today. a) teacher b) coach c) quide d) trainer The in Egypt kept the art facts in good condition b) people c) Nile 3 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to a) Litankhamun's mask b) climate c) gold d) the maseum Answer the following questions: 4 Describe the mask of Tutankhamun. Why aid the Ancient Egyptians like using gold?



2 enjoyed - Omar - playing - outside - games.

Egyptians - traded other - Ancient - with - countries.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:



I Rania and Huda are very good at (hide)

2 When we were playing, we (find) = an old metal box.

Punctuate the following: did you like playing board games, ola?



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:



"What I found on the beach"

What did you find on the beach? To whom are you writing the message?



ما هي قمتك المفضلة؟

What's your favorers story



Look and read:

ابطر وامرأـ

Nadia went to the shops with her friends. They bought some ciothes, some jewelry, and some snacks. Then, they passed a toy shop. In the window of the toy shop was a cuddly toy. "Oh, look!" said Nadia. "Last time I came here, I was with my sister. She loved this cuddly toy I'm going to buy it for her". فيمت نادية إلى المتاجر مع صنيفاتها. اشتروا بعنص الملابس وبعنص المحوهرات وبعنص الوجنات الخفيفة. ثم مروا بمتجر لعنب، في نافيذة متجر الألعاب كان هناك دمية عناق. «أوه» تصروانه قالت نادية: «آخر مرة أتبت فيها إلى هناه كنت مع آختي. لقد أحبت هذه العبة، أن



Last summer, I moved to a big, busy city I reatly missed the countryside. Then, one afternoon, I was walking through the middle of the city when I found a beautiful park I spent the rest of the day there, among the trees and the flowers. I still miss the countryside sometimes, but I go to the park every day. It's my favorite place in the whole city!





One day, a little monkey was feeling bored. He climbed to the top of the tallest tree and looked around. Nearby, some other little monkeys were playing a game. "Come and p ay with us!" they shouted. But the little monkey felt shy. Slowly, ne went closer. And slowly, he felt braver Before long, the little monkey felt happy. It was good to have fun!





When I was a boy, I liked to go to the beach with my grandfather. We used his metal detector to find interesting things in the sand One time, we found a small, metal box. "Treasure!" I said. My grandfather laughed. "Go on, then," he said. "What's inside?" I opened the box. Inside, there was a very special kind of treasure. It was a letter. A very old letter...

عندما كنت صبيًّا، أحببت الذهاب إلى الشاطن مع جدى، استحدمنا جهار اكشف عن المعادن الخاص به نلعثور على أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام في الرمال، دات مرة ، وجندا صندوفٌ معدثٍ صعبرًا مالكنزا» قلت، ضحك جدى، قل:«استمر ، إذن»، مماذا بوجد في الداحل؟ فتحت الصندوق، في الداخل، كان هماك كنز من نوع خاص جدًّا، لقد كانت رسالة، رسالة قديمة جدًّا



	Extra ve	pubulary	
jewelry	مجوهرات	snack	وجبة خفيفة
pass	يمر على	miss	يشتاق إلى / يفتقد
the countryside	الريف	walk through	يمشى خلال
feel bored	يشعر بالملل	climb	يتسلق
nearby (ad)	قريب	shout	يصيح
shy (adj.)	حجول	braver (ad,)	أشجع
metal detector	كاشف معادن	treasure	كبر
laugh	يضحك		

By Dalia پال مبتح

Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many interesting artifacts to see. My brother and I were walking when we found a room that had lots of animal statues. The Ancient Egyptians made lots of animal statues, because animals were very important in their culture. First, we saw different statues in gold and silver. Then we saw some in clay, stone, and granite, too.

My favorite was a small snake made of metal. My brother liked a gold falcon with blue glass eyes. There were lots of cats made of brightly colored stone, too. The Ancient Egyptians adored cats. They believed that cats kept them safe.

الدا تصاف ما مدين الهال إلى منه العالم الدين الدين الدين المن المناسبة على الدين المناسبة ال





Myself and others









Unit



Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises



AL-Azher



100%

بنهایة هذه الوحدة، سیکون التلمید قادرًا علی أن:



By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

listen, read, research, and write about bird and animal proverbs

listen to and understand a presentation about eco-tourism in Egypt · read and learn about eco-tourism and wildlife. use "must/mustrit" to talk about something we have to do

use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future

read advertisements for eco-tourism vacations in Egypt

- · read and learn about bird migration.
- · say words with two or three syllables.
- read and write a blog about animal habitats.
- · create an information leaflet about the Nile Delta.

بقردو بتعامر عن السياحة المثبة والجباة البريق

سنخدم انحالة الشرطبة الأولى ينتعسر عن أشباه محمل جدولها في المستقرل.

يادرأ ويتعامر عن همرة الطيور.

يقون كلمات من مقطعين أو ثلاثة مقاطعي

يقرأ ويكتب مدونة عن أماكل مصيشة البصيطاب

بمستر دشرة معلوماتية عن دلتا النبل.

Old you know?

The biggest bird in the world is the *ostrich. It can be 210 cm long. It can run fast, but it can't fly! The smallest bird is the "bee hummingbird. It's about 5.5 cm long



Steppe eagle is the national bird of Egypt and it is the "symbol included on the Egyptian flag. They are very proud birds. Steppe eagles do not eat "dead prey but only fresh kills

* ostrich

* bee hummingbird

ليحن لطبان

* steppe eagle

* symbol

* dead prey

ور بسه مبيه







Listen and say:

استمع وقل

		Main yecabı	dary		
proverbs	أمثال	successful (adj.)	تاجع	similar (odj.)	مشابه
careful (adj.)	مهتم/جریس	real (adj.)	حقيقى	sensible (adj)	منطاق

Extra vocabulary

feathers	ريش	description	وصف	well-known (adj.)	معروف
true (adj.)	حقيقى	exactly	بالصيط	exact (adj)	ulata delleren.
meaning	معنى	worm	دودة	strange (adj)	غريب
nest	عش	plans	hhi	carefully	uesey

تعريف الأمعال Conjugation of verbs

Reg	jular verbs			أفعسال متنظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
suggest	يقترح	suggested	need	يحتاج	needed
flock	يجتمع	flocked	mention	پنکر	mentioned
count	787	counted	hatch	يثقس	hatched
dare	g)asi	dared	succeed	تبخع	succeeded
Irre	gular verbs			أفعال فير منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
mean	يعنى	meant	catch	dung	caught
know	يعرف	knew	become	Sint	became
fall	يسقط	fell	learn	, resta	learnt
understand	AN	understood	think	- Like a	thought

Expressions and Phrases

generally true	بشكل عامر حقيق	scientific fact	حفيقة علمية
as well as	بالإصافة إلى	more than	أكثر من
How about?	ماذا عن ٢٠٠٠	flock together	يجتمعون سويا
look the same	يبدو مثل بعص	too many plans	الكثير من الخطط
seem scary	ثبدو مخيفة	well done	شئسهاً
You're getting the idea!	أنت تفهم الفكرة!	make mistakes	يراكب أخطاء

Definitions

proverb	A proverb is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true. المثل عبارة معروفة عن شيء صحيح بشكل عام. A proverb has another meaning as well as its exact meaning المثل له معنى آخر بالإضافة إلى معناه الدقيق.
successful	Someone who is successful tries to do something, and does it.
similar	When two things are sim lar, they might look the same or do the same things عندما يكون هناك شيئان متشابهان، فإنهما قد يبدوان بنفس الشكل أو يفعلان نفس الأشياء،
real	If something is real, it hoppens and it's true.
sensible	If something is sens ble, it's a good idea that someone has thought about carefully. إذا كان هناك شيء ما منطقي، فإنه فكرة جيدة فكر بها شخص ما بدقة وحرص.
careful	A careful person tries hard not to make mistakes. الشحص الحريص يحاول حاهدا عدم ارتكاب الأصطاء

Proverba

- "The early bird catches the worm"

«انطائر السكر يصطاد الدودة» وبعى أن الشخص الذي يبدأ بانعمل باكراً يكون الأكثر دخاجا.

- "Birds of a feather flock together."

- « الطبور على أشكانها تقع» وتعنى أن الأشحاص المماثلين تحتون القيام بنفس الأشباء.
- "Don't count your chickens before they hatch."

- «لا تعد دحاجك فين أن يفقس» وتعنى ألا تعتمد على شيء لم يحدث بعد.
- "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly."
 - «الطائر الذي يجرؤ على السقوط هو الطائر الذي يتعلم الطيران» تعنى أن الشخص الذي يتجاوز مخاوفه وتحدياته هو الذي ينحح.

«حتى السر لن يطير أعلى من الشمس» «حتى السر لن يطير أعلى من الشمس» «Even an eagle will not fly higher than sun." وتعلى أن هناك حدودًا لكل شيء حتى الشحص والكائنات القولة لن تسلطح تعاور ذلك الحدود.

"Singing birds don't build nests."

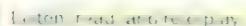
«انطيور التي تعني لا تني أعشاشًا»

تعنى أن الشخص الذي يتكلم كثيرا لا يقوم يعمل المهام الأساسية المطلوبة منه.

«ليس فقط الريش الحميل هو الذي تجعل الطيور حميلة» "This notionly fine feathers which make fine birds." - وتعي أنه لا يحت أن تحكم على الشخص بناء على الحمال الخارجي، ولكن من خلال ما يمثلك من صفات وقيم حميلة.

Choose the correct answer:

- I It's a beautiful bird, it has long wings with colorful (skin feathers fur har)
- 2 He always gets high marks, he is very (sensible similar = successful real)
- 3 My T-shirt and yours look the same, they are very (same strong some similar)
- 4 When something happens and it's true, this means it's (real large strange description)
- 5 The early bird (hatches needs catches knows) the worm
- 6 Singing birds don't (want mention fly build) nests



استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Injy, what does this proverb mean? "The early bird catches the worm."

Well, proverbs have more than one meaning. This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something.

حسنًا، الأمثال لها أكثار من معتلى يحبرنا هناء المثل أن الطائر اللذي يكون مبكرًا، أو أول من يضاول اصطباد الدودة، عادة ما تصطادها، لـذا، فهذا يعلى أيضًا أنه لكى تكون باجحًا، عليك أن تكون أول من يعمل شبئًا ما





How about this one? "Birds of a feather flock together".

ماد، عن هذا؟ «الطبور عني أشكالها تقع»،

If they flock together, that means they stay in a large group. And maybe it mentions feathers because they all have similar feathers.

و تجمعوا معًا، فهذا يعتى الهم صفول في مجموعة كبيرة، وريما بذكر الريش لأن جميعها لها ريش





You mean they all look the same?

هن تقصدين أنهم حميعًا سدون بعس الشء؟

Yes. But here, it means that similar people like doing the same things.

تعمر، ولكن هنا يعني أن الأشخاص المماثلين بحبون القيام بنفس الأشياء.





Malak

Okay, here's a strange one! "Don't count your chickens before they hatch."

حسنا، هنا مثل أخر عربب! «لا تعد دجاجك قبل أن بنفس».

Well, you might have four eggs in a nest, but you don't really know how many will become chickens. So maybe it's about being careful before you know something will happen.



حسنا، فيد يكون تدييل أربع تنصاب في أنفيد أن شيئًا ما سيحدث ل**ذلك ريما يتعلق الأمر بالحن**ذر قبيل أن **تعرف أن شيئًا ما س**يحدث



Malak

So you don't make too many plans before something is real. That's sensible. How about this proverb? "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly." Do you think that means you have to try something that seems scary if you want to succeed?

لانك لا بص ع بكثير من الخطيط فين أن تصبح الأمر حقيقًا هنا معقبة النباء عن هنا العطاط في أن تصبح الأمر حقيقًا هنا معقبة المنا عن العلي المناطقة الأنت والطائر البدي لتعتبر الطبيرات في العلقاء المناطقة ا

Yes, I do. Well done, Malak! You're getting the idea!

تعمر أفعل، أحسنتِ يا ملاك! لقد وصلت الفكرة!





THE REAL PROPERTY.



Remembering a Understanding Applying - Analyzing a Evaluating a Creating

Listen and	circle the correct answer	from a, b, c, or d:
------------	---------------------------	---------------------

6

I Salma read a book about

(a birds - b worm - c proverbs - d animals)

2 Proverbs have more than one

(a word - b meaning - c verb - d sentence)

3 "The early bird catches the .. " .."

(a. worm - b. food - c. ant - d. book) **

4 To be successful, you need to be the to do something.

(a. last - b. second - c. third - d. first)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

" means a good idea that someone has thought about carefuly.

a) Strange

b) Successful

c) Sensible

d) Similar

2 "Don't count your before they hatch."

a) worms

b) birds

c) chickens

d) feathers

A/An " is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true.

a) verb

b) noun

c) adjective

d) proverb

4 "Birds of a feather together."

a) sing

b) dare

c) hatch

d) flock

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

meaning - true - dares - scary - sings

Proverbs are amazing. A proverb is a well-known phrase about something which is generally (1) Proverbs have more than one (2) For example, this proverb "The bird who (3) to fall is the bird who learns to fly."

It means you have to try something that seems (4) if you want to succeed.

Read the text and answer the questions:

5

My name is Lama I'm in grade six I love reading very much Yesterday, I read a book about proverbs. It was very interesting. Proverbs usually have another meaning as we as its exact meaning. For example, this proverb, "Birds of a feather fork overner" means that similar people like doing the same things. But it mentions feathers to show that they are all similar in something. Another proverb is "Singing birds don't build nests". It means that the person who talks a lot doesn't have time to do his work.

Choose the co	MIECT BIISHED III	111 4, 5, 4, 51 41	
The general id	ea of the text is a	bout "	
a) Proverbs	Ę) Lama's school	
c) Lama's fam	ily) Lama's hobbies	
. The proverb m	entions ""	to show that birds are	similar in someth
a) tails	b) wings	c) feathers	d) eyes
The underline	d verb "flock toge	her" means	1 +11+11+11 >
a) count	b) dare	c) hatch	d) fly
Answer the fo	ollowing questio	ns:	
What does La	ma love doing ve	y much?	
it the words in t	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	to make sentences	
t the words in t	he correct order birds — together —	to make sentences	***************************************
t the words in to the flock — of — B	he correct order birds — together — together — together — together — together — together — together — together — together — together toget	to make sentences	is.
t the words in to the flock — of — B make — before count — before	he correct order birds — together — together — together — together — together — together — together — together — together — together toget	to make sentences a feather. on't – plans – real – chickens – hatch – the	is.
t the words in to the flock — of — B make — before count — before	he correct order Birds — together — e e — something — D e — your — Don't —	to make sentences a feather. on't – plans – real – chickens – hatch – the	is.
t the words in to flock — of — B make — before count — before don't — Sing results anctuate the following the following results and the following results are the following results and the following results are the following re	he correct order Birds — together — e e — something — D e — your — Don't —	to make sentences a feather. on't – plans – real – chickens – hatch – the	is.
t the words in to flock — of — But an an eagle were an eagle words in to the following	he correct order birds — together — together — together — Don't — e — your — Don't — g — birds — nests	to make sentences a feather. on't - plans - real - chickens - hatch - the build.	is.



Lesson 2





Eco-tourism in Egypt

السياحة البيئية فئ مصر



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

	Mella you	copulary	
eco-tourism	السياحة البرنية	sustainable (adj.)	سبثمر
simple (adj)	Print	accommodation	سكن
ideal (adj.)	مثالى	habitat	مسكن / بيئة طبيعية

Extra vocabulary

tourists	سیاح	historical (adj.)	تارىخى	desert safari	رحلة سفاري في الصحراء
popular (odj.)	مشهور	traditional (adj)	تقليدى	nature	الصبعة
pollution	التلوث	long distance	مسافة طويلة	journeys	رحلات
species	أبواع/ فصائل	fantastic (adj.)	راثع	photographs	صور فوتوعرافية
environment	البينة	excellent (adj.)	ممتاز	hiking	، لتىزە
tent	حيمة	tour	جولة سياحية	meals	وجبات
chance	فرصة	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	trips	رحلات

تمريف الأمعال Conjugation of verbs

	Regular verbs			أفعيال متنظمية	
Present		Past	Present	1	Past
snorkel	يغطس	snorkeled	climb	يتسلق	climbed
sail	يبحر	sailed	damage	يدمر	damaged
protect	يحمى	protected	cause	يسب	caused
migrate	يهاجر	migrated	respect	يحترم	respected
camp	يحيم/ يعسكر	camped	scare	يخيف	scared
	Irregular verbs			أفعسال فير متنظمية	
Present		Past	Present		Past
find	أخوا	found	hurt	يجرح/ يؤذى	hurt
bring	بحصر	brought	go down	تعرب (الشمس)	went down

Expressions and Phrases

as we as	بالإصافة إن	go snorkeling	يدهب تلعطس
sa on the Nie	ينجر في اسن	its designed to	مصممة ب
bird and wildlife watching	مشاهده انضور والحناه البرية	at certain times of year	في أوقب محددة من العام
warmer weather	طقس أكثر دفقا	go over Egypt	تتحرك فوق مصر
on vacations to	ق إحارب لكي	migrating water birds	لصور المائية المهاجرة
get too close to	يقترب جدًّا من	fly away	يطين بعيثا
desert sunsets	غروب لشمين في الصحراء	along the river	عني أميداد النهر
underwater photography	النصوير بحث انفاه	set off an a tour	ينطنق ق رحلة
bright-co ored fish	الأسماك د ب الألوان الراهية	protected area	منضفة محمية
travel a ong the river	تسافر تطول انتهر	under the stors	أسمل انتجوم
cooking outdoors	الطبح في انهواء الطلق	look after .	بافندی د .

Definitions

respect	like something and want to look after it	أن تحب شيئا ما وتريد الاعتباء به
sustainab e	do something in a way that doesn't dam	nage the environment
2021011100 s		فعل شيء ما بطريقة لا تضر البيئة
= man la	living in a place where you have what y	you need, and nothing more
5 mple		العيش في مكان به ما تحتاج إليه، لا شيء أكثر.
accommodation	This is somewhere you stay	ٔ لمکان لدی تقیم فیه
ideal	perfect or excellent	، رائع أو ممتاز

Vocabulary Check

journey: رحله طوسه The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt trip: رحلة فصيرة This is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips حوله ريازه عدة 'tour' We're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water أماكن خلال نفس الرحلة} We'll travel along the river.

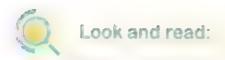


"Eco-" is related to the environment or environment friendly المقطع "eco" يعود دائمًا على البيئة أو يعني صديق للبيئة.

- There are many historical places to visit in Egypt
 - يوجد العديد من الأماكن التاريحية التي يمكن ريارتها في مصر،
- Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment, and becomes very popular now.
 - السياحة البيئية هي طريقة سفر لا تدمر البيئة، وأصبحت مشهورة الأر..
- Many people are starting to visit Egypt for birds and wildlife watching. - العديد من الأشخاص يبدءون في زيارة مصر لمشاهدة الطيور والحياة البرية.
- There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt

يوحد أكثر من ٤٥ بوعًا من الطيور في مصر،

- Wildlife watching is ideal for people who respect nature



Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important — but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too.



و رسوری و بشده ها موش به ساعه ساه انقطا . با با استوانی که کاری بشیادی مهمیه اوبلو استا که

لبيئية أصبحت دات شعبية كبيرة أيضًا.

Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution

إقامة بسيطة، وليس في فنادق كبرة، ويحب ألا يسافروا بطرق تسبب الكثير من التلوث،

Many people are starting to visit Egypt for bird and wildlife watching. There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate – they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.

مصر الطبور الطبور المسافات طويلة جـدًّا، وكثير من رحلاتها تمر فـوق مصر، لأنها تقع في شمال إفريقي، وقريبة

There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat and people must protect it.

مثالًا الله المشاهدة ، عديد من الطيور العائبة المهاجرة. إنه موطن مهم وبحب على الداس حمايته،

People who go bird watching in Egypt will have a lot to see They mustn't get too close to the birds, because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs.

عديًّا والدن يمنيهم المشاهدة من مسافة أمية والثقاءة الكثير من الصور،

Wildlife watching is ideal for people who respect nature, and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

الذة لحياة الرية مثالية الأشماص الدين يحترمون الطبيعة، وتعد السياحة البيئية وسيقة حيدة للأشحاص للقيام بذلك

What is eco-tourism?

SG

2 How many species of birds are there in Egypt?

Vacations in Egypt

إجازات فم مصر

On the river

Hi, I'm Nadia Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!



Desert sunsets

Hi, I'm Adam. I love visiting this place with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down — more animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.



ومئا، دا در الحراب هند المكان مع عائلت العدد هنت الغالف المصاب، وفي المساه، سياهديا الكتب مي الحراد . الأرماء التعريب عبد كتب عبر الحيونياء على الهما الكت بيما في العام سيلمي في الحارج وبعاد : حداد العام سيلمي في الأرماء التحروف الدان الحيث عليب حضا احتمية الم تستيير في مجموعات صغيرة لروته الحياة التراثة من الها

Snorkel safari

Hi, I'm Lara We're going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs. The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips.



ا عالما المعلى المولود فيه تجلد الطاء في الأربيا استبطاق في حوله ما الساطي بعواء الألاثاء اليوال هداء الألاث علياء الألاث اليوال هذا المدافقة المحالة
من الرحالات

Birds at the sea

Hi, I'm Fares. Next week, we're going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. We'il visit quiet beaches on a small bus, to see how many different kinds we can see. The sea in this area is a very popular place for birds to find food, so it will be a busy day. We're definitely going to bring our cameras! We must bring our own lunches too, as there are no shops there.



ميره سو برت الم در المرزة

9 4



We use "must" when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do نستخدم "must" when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do نستخدم "must" عند التحدث عن شيء يجب علينا فعله أو مهم فعنه.

تكملة الحملة + الفعل في المصدر (Subject (الفاعل) + m ،st + (Inf

We must bring a tent.

We use "mustn't (must not)" when we are not allowed to do something.

نستخدم "mustn't (must not)" عندما يكون غير مسموح لنا بمعن شيء مار

. تكملة الحملة + الفعل في لمصير (mustn't + (nf) + الفاعل Subject (الفاعل)

We mustn't swim here because there might be crocodiles!

أن نسح هنا لأن من المحتمل وجود ثماسيحا

Choose the correct answer:

We (must the cant - must - aren't) be careful in the natural environment.

SB

Omar (must - is = must n't - can) speak loudly in the library

You must (finish of nishing - finishing - finished) your homework before going

You must (finish if nishing - finished) your homework before going to sleep.

- .. We (must should = mustnit doesnit) take pets to school!
- 5 You (mustn't doesn't must isn't) shout.
- 6 The train will leave at 7 am We must (arriving arrive arrived arrives) on time.
- 7 My father drives a car very well, but he (can't mustn't sn't must) wear a seatbelt
- S Salma (mustn't .sn t = don't must) eat too many sweets. It's unhealthy.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

h	C	hoose the correc	t answer from a, b	, c, or d:	
ľ			in th		8
	·		b) cooking		d) watching
	2		" means perfect or		-,
			b) Beautiful		d) Bright
			is a way of travelir	ng that doesn't dam	nage the environmen
		a) Safari		c) Sailing	d) Hiking
	r	On eco-tourism v	acations, we always	stay in simple	
		a) city	b) accommodation	c) village	d) apartment
		Eco-tourism is me	ore	than traditional to	ourism.
		a) expensive	b) hard	c) sustainable	d) worse
		You mustn't get to	oo close to birds, the	y might	•
		a) go down	b) fly away	c) migrate	d) damage
	I	People who go b	ird	in Egypt will have	e a lot to see.
		a) watching	b) snorkeling	c) cooking	d) traveting
	8	Eco-tourism is de	signed to	nature.	
		a) damage	b) hurt	c) protect	d) take
	Re	ead and complet	te the text with the	words in the box	K: 4
		migrat	e — warmer — colder -	- interesting - distan	oces
	M	any people are :	starting to visit Egy	pt for bird and	wildlife watching.
			(1) birds (· ·
		(2) - they r	must fly to different	countries at certair	times of year, to
	fin	d food, or have	(3) weather	. The birds often r	must fly very long
		(4) , and lo	ts of their journeys (go over Egypt, bec	ause 't is 'n North
	Af	rica and close to	Asia and Europe.		

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

t cook - under - We'll - the - meals - stars.

2 mustn't - trash - We - in - leave - desert - the.

3 watching - in - People - go - bird - Egypt.

to - respect - Eco tourism - a good - is - way - nature.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

.

You (mustn't) respect nature.

2 I mustn't (scaring) birds or animals.

3 You (must) _____ throw trash in the river.

We mustn't (ate) in the library.

You must (listening) to your teacher in the class.

6 They (can) play on the crosswalk.

Ahmed (mustn't) be careful while crossing the road.

You must (brushed) your teeth before going to bed.

Punctuate the following:

.

legypt is an amazing country

2 we must bring a tent

Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Eco-tourism"

a way of traveling - protect nature



LINESON -



The benefits of pro-territm

فوائد السياحة البيئية



Look and read:

انظر وافرأ:

My presentation today is about eco-tourism and why it is a good idea. Egypt is a very beautiful country, so we must look after it. However, lots of people want to visit Egypt because it is a very interesting place.

ير من ، تاس في زيارة مصر لأنها مكان مثير للاهتمام للغاية

It is good if we have lots of visitors, but tourism can sometimes mean too many big hotels and too much traffic. This can cause problems. Eco-tourism is good because people can visit and enjoy the environment but not in a way that damages the environment. These are my ideas about why I think eco-tourism is a good idea:

لطريقة تَضر بالبينة، هذه هي أفكاري حول سبب عنف دي أن السياحة البيئية فكرة جيدة:

If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it. If tourists take care of the places they visit, they will cause less damage to the environment. If tourists stay in simple, eco-friendly accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels. If eco-tourism is successful, it will create new jobs for the local people.

سناحة البيئلية، فرنها ستحاق فارس عمل جديدة لنسكان المحبيبين،

Thank you for listening. Are there any questions?

Extra vocabulary

presentation	عرص تقديمي	look after = take	care of	traffic	حرکه مروریه
cause		less damage	صرر أفل	eco-friendiy (ad)	صديق للبيئة
successful (adj.)	ناجح	create new jobs	تخلق فرص عمل	campsite	مخيم / معسكر
go sightseeing السياحية	يشاهد المعالم	relaxing (adj.)	مريح	local communities	المجتمعات المحلية

Language Focus

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

. تكمنة الحملة + المعل في المصدر (Inf) + اسم جمع Heyl You!

I go to school on foot.





Lama visits her grandparents every Friday.

5he watches TV in the evening.

Omar studies his lessons in the afternoon.

تكمنة الحمنة + المعل في المصدر (Il Wel Theyl You! + اسم حمع + المعل في المصدر (Il Wel Theyl You!

We don't have eggs for breakfast.



تكملة الجملة + المعل في المصدر doesn't + (inf.) + اسم معرد + المعل في المصدر

Ali doesn't play basketball.

Choose the correct answer:

They (rides - ride - riding - to ride) their bikes to school.

Huda (play - plays - playing - to play) tennis at the weekend

Doga and Asmaa (don't - doesn't - aren't - haven't) have a car.

The cat doesn't (eat - eats - eating - ate) grass

زمن المستقبل البسيط The Future Simple Tense

Affirmative Form: صيعة الإثبت



Subject + Will + (inf) من المصدر (المعل في المصدر المعلل عبد المعلل في المصدر المعلل عبد المعلل ع

We will meet at the club tomorrow.

Negative Form: صبعة النفي



Subject + wili not = won't + (inf) نكملة الحملة + الفعل في المصدر.

Soha won't travel next week.

Choose the correct answer:

I (visited - v sit - w ll visit - visits) my grandpa next week

She (isn't - won't - don't - doesn't) come to my party tomorrow.

Mazen won't (studies - studying studied - study) tonight.

ئو الشرطية (الحالة الأولم) (الحالة الأولم) if (First Conditional

We use "If (First Conditional)" to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.

نستخدم "ff" بحالة وبشرطية الأولى للجديث عن الأشباء التي من المحتمل أن تحدث عن المستقيل.



If I am hungry, I will eat a snack.

If he doesn't leave now, he'll miss the bus.



will = |l|

لاحظ الاختصارات:

If people learn more about the environment, they want to protect it will not = won't

If tourists stay in simple accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels

Choose the correct answer:

If you (go -goes - went - going) to bed late tonight, you won't get up early tomorrow

If they study hard, they will (passed - pass passing passes) the exam

If she (finish finishes - finished - finishing) her homework, she will play some video games.

- 4 If it (don't aren't isn't doesn't) rain tomorrow, we'll go to the beach
- 5 If he (don't isn't doesn't dan't) wear a coat, he will feel cold.
- 6 If it's sunny this weekend, we (can t are wil is) go to the park
- 7 If we (has = have having had) time, we'll watch the TV.
- 8 If it rains, we will not (playing plays played play) outside
- 9 If Soha and Omar (saving saved save saves) money, they will buy a new car
 If they (doesn't do didn't don't) invite me, I won't come to the party



هجرة الطيور Bird Migration



Main vocabulary







kingfisher



swift - -



eagle

Extra vocabulary

journey	رحلة طويلة
falcon	صفر
oases	واحاب

ا وحلة North Africa معر flock الاحلام

شمال إفريقيا سرب عطبع) تحيره قارون Europe

Mediterranean coasts
flamingos

سو حن يتجر المتوسط طبور التجام

أوروبا

تصريف الأمحال Conjugation of verbs

R	Regular verbs			أقعسال منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
migrate	يهاحر	migrated	seem	بىدو	seemed
use	يستخدم	used	try	يحاول	tried
Ir	regular verbs			أفعسال غير منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
leave	يغادر	left	make	يصبع	made
know	يعرف	knew	spend	يقضى	spent

Expressions and Phrases

such as	مثل	year after year	سنة تلو الأخرى
spend a long time	يقضى وقثا طويلًا	find out	يكتشف

Important sentences

- Many birds migrate to find warmer weather.
- بهاجر العديد من الصور بحثًا عن طفس أكثر دفئًا.
- There are often large flocks of water birds near lakes and oases.
 - غالبًا ما توجد أسراب كبيرة من الطيور المائية بالقرب من البحيرات والواحات.
- Migrating birds fly very long distances.

- تطير الطيور المهاجرة لمسافات طوينة جدًّا.
- قد يستجدمون الشمس أو البحوم لمعرفة أين يدهبون. They might use the sun or the stars to find out where to go

رحلة طويلة A long journey



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

تهاجير العديد من الطبور من وزالي مصير، وغيرها، يسبب موقعها في العالم، شمال إقريقها أكثر سخونة من أوروباء لدلك في فصل الشناء، تعادر العديد من الطبور بلندان شمال أوروب وتطير إلى مصر وغيرها من الأماكن الأكثير دفتا، وهذا يعنى أن الكثير من الطبور المثيرة للاهتمام تهاجير إلى مصر، مثل السبور والصفور وطبور السعام.



Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

ا المنظم المنظم المنظم المنظم المنظم المنظم المنظم المنظم المنظم المنظم المنظم المنظم المنظم المنظم المنظم الم المنظم والبحيرات والحارد بحيرة فارون في الفيوم مكان حيد لرؤية طبور التحام.

Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. How do these birds know where to go? They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

رَّبَتَهَا فَي الطريق، لقد أُمصي العلماء وقتُ طوريلًا في محاولة معرفة كيفية القيام بِقَلْك!

Why do many birds migrate to and from Egypt?

2 What do migrating birds eat?

SE



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

A syllable s a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound

المقطع أنصوش: هو جزء من كلمة، ويحتوى على صوت متحرك وأحد.

₹ fal-con

ر کلمان ذات موطعین	three-syllable words کلمات ذات ثلاثة مقاطع 🗼 🗼
ea-gles	king-fish-er
weath-er	pel-i-can
<u>fal-con</u>	fla-min-go
care-ful	suc-cess-ful
tour-ism	snor-kel-ing
E gypt	im-por-tant

*

Stress التشديد

The way in which a part of a word is emphasized more than the other parts while speaking

Most two-syllable words have the stress on the first syllable.

معظم الكلمات ذات المقطعين يكون التشديد على المقطع الأول.

'ea-gles - 'weath-er - 'fal-con - 'care-ful - 'tour-ism - 'E-gypt

Three-syllable words can have the stress on the first syllable or the second syllable.

اه مع عصر د شادية معاطع بيان الله الله الله الله الله

'k ng-fish-er - 'pel-i-can - fla-'min- go - suc-'cess ful - 'snor-kel-ing - im-'por-tant



Leasen



• Remembering • Understanding Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

4	Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:	6
2	Many birds	
1 0	hoose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:	4
3	of birds fly long distances. a) Tours b) Flocks c) Trips d) Journeys Birds to find warmer weather. a) migrate b) live c) prefer d) spend Tourists must of the place they visit. a) seem b) look like c) take care d) leave accommodation is good for the environment. a) Big b) Expensive c) Eco-friendly d) Large	
E	lead and complete the text with the words in the box:	4
0	coasts - eat - flocks - flamingos - deserts lany water birds migrate to Egypt. You can often see large 1) f birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterrant (2) , as well as on the Nile. These birds often (3) fish or plant live in rivers, lakes, pases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good planted of see (4) .	ean ants

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world North Africa is notter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this.

7		Chases	Alba ann		swer fro		
	7	Lnoose	the cor	rect and	wer tro	m a. n.	c. or a:
•		while it is about the the other	Manager of Manager of				

- The general idea of the text is about ...

- a) Egypt
 b) the weather
 c) bird migration
 d) northern European countries

Even young birds that migrate for the _____ seem to know how to get to the place they need to be.

- a) second time b) first time c) fourth time d) third time
- 3 The underlined verb "find out" means
 - a) travel b) use
- c) discover

Answer the following questions:

Why do many birds migrate to and from Egypt?

Summarize the passage in two sentences.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

water - migrate - Many - Egypt - birds - to.

fly - can - long - Birds - distances - very.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 If it rains, I will (staying) at home.
- 2 If I'm not busy tomorrow, I (be) help you.
- 3 If you (not) hurry, you will miss the train.
- 4 If it (snow) , we'll go skiing
- 5 If Omar comes home late, his mother (doesn't) be angry.
- 6 If you (presses) _____ this button, the computer will switch off.
- 7 If he (feel) _____ tired, he will go to the doctor.
- 8 If she doesn't (works) hard, she won't pass the exam.



Writing & Project





المدونة

Main vocabulary

blog	animal habitats	أماكن معيشة الحبوانات
محمية رأس محمد الوطبية The Ras Mohammed National Park	Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء

Extra vocabulary

safe (adj.)	امن	places	أماكن	welcome	ً مرحبًا
litter	فمبمة	babies	صعبر	planet	كوكب
fantastic (adj.)	وناح	locals	سكان محتنون	shark	سمك القرش

	Regular verbs			أفعسال منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
protect	يحمى	protected	waste	يهدر	wasted
drop	يسقط	dropped	recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled
	Irregular verbs			أفعسال غير منتظمة	
Present	irregular verbs	Past	Present	اقعـــال غير منتظمة	Past
Present think	Irregular verbs	Past thought		اقعال غیر منتظمة	Past found

Expressions and Phrases

make sure	يتأكد	for example	على سبيل المثال	good for	جهد ل
famous for	مشهور بـ	waste water	يهدر المياه	drop litter	يلقى القمامة على الأرض
cut down trees	يقطع الأشجار	great for	عظيم لـ	a lot of space	مساحة كبيرة

Definitions

a habitat a place where an animal or plant lives

مكان حيث يعيش الحيوان أو النبات.

جمل هام: - Importent sentonces

- Arwa is writing a blog about how it's important to protect an mal habitats
 تقوم أروى بكتابة مدونة عن أهمية حماية أماكن معيشة الحيوانات.
- Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies.
 - تحتاج الحيوانات إلى أماكن آمنة للعيش، وإيجاد الطعام، والاعتناء يصغارهم،
- There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers.
- To protect these habitats, we mustn't waste water or drop "tter, we can recycle paper, so people don't cut down the trees.

التحفاظ على تبك الأماكن، تحب علينا ألا تهدر المياه أو تلقى القمامة، تستطيع أن تعبد تدوير الورق حتى لا تقطع الناس الأشجار،

Hello, I'm Arwa — welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about something which I think is really important.

I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and took after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.

مرحيًا، أنا أروى - مرحيًا بك في مدونتي؛ أكتب اليوم عن شيء أعتقد أنه مهم حقًّ،

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife watching holidays. This is good for the country, and good for the people, too. When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it.

أيضًا. عندما يتعلم انناس عن الحياة البرية، وإنهم يريدون حمايتها.

We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also plant flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects. You don't need a lot of space — here's a garden box I made for my window!

والحشرات، لا تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة - إليك صندوق الحديقة الدي صعته للعدني:

- What do animals need to live?
- 2 What can we do to protect animal habitats?



انظر وافرأ:

الأسباب والنتائج Causes and Effects

الأسباب Causes

النتائج Effects

: There are floods, droughts, or fires. هناك فيضانات أو جفاف أو حرائق. Animal habitats are damaged. تضرر البيئات الحيوانية.

Animal habitats are damaged. تضرر البيئات الحيوانية. Animals don't have safe places to live, , find food, or look after babies.

لن يكون لدى الحيوانات أماكن آمنة للعيش فيها أو العثور في الطعام أو رعاية الصغار.

A habitat is safe and healthy. الموطن آمن وصحى.

Lots of animals can live there. يمكن أن يعيش الكثير من الحيوانات هناك.

We recycle paper. نقوم بإعادة تدوير الورق. Trees aren't cut down. لن يتمر قطع الأشجار.

We grow plants and flowers. نزرع النباتات والرهور.

*

Birds and insects have food. سیکوں لدی الطیور والحشرات طعام.



Conjunctions bulgul)

A conjunction is a word that is used to connect words, phrases, and

بروابط هي كلمة تستخدم للربط بين كلمات، عبارات، أو جمل.

We use "and" to join two similar ideas together.

We saw turtles, pelicans, and lizards when we went wildlife watching.

We use "but" to join two contrasting ideas.

تستجدم فلكري ليربط بين فكرتين متناقصتين.

This is a beautiful river, but there is pollution in it now.

We use "so" to join two sentences to show a result.

تستحدم علالك عليط بين حملتين لتوصيح النتيحة.

السبب reason I was tired, ولذلك أما كمت متعبًا.

I didn't go to work. نمر أذهب للعمل.

result usual

We use "pecause" to show the reason.

النتيحة result

السبب reason

I didn't go to work, لم أذهب للعمل.

because لأن I was tired. أنا كنت متعبًا.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Omar likes to swim (but) play tennis.

I went to the doctor (so) I was feeling ill.

The children went to the zoo to see lions, tigers (because)

giraffes.

- 4 The weather was good, (so) I didn't have time to go for a picnic.
- 5 It was cold yesterday, (because) . I wore a coat.
- 6 I like chocolate (and) I don't like chips.



محمية رأس محمد الوطنية The Ras Mohammed National Park



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here.



You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird watching.

أيضاء وهو مكان رائع سشاهدة عطيور

The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because t is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

g was a di

Where is the Ras Mohammed National Park?

What can visitors do at the National Park?

CE



Lessons 4 & 5



Remembering • Understanding Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

The Ras Mohammed National Park is on the Sea

(a. Dead - b. Red - c. Mediterranean - d. Nile)

This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life and weather.

(a word - b meaning - c amazing - d cold)

People come from ait over the world to and scuba dive here.

(a. ski - b. snorkel - c. study - d. see)

You can see and lots of brightly colored fish.

(a. plants - b. trees - c. falcons - d. coral reefs)

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wildlife - habitats - protect - healthy - unhealthy

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

itter - or - waste - We - water - drop - mustn't.

should - to - try - animal - habitats - We - protect.

3 Egypt, - types - there - In - many - are - of habitats.

Animals — to — need — places — in — live — safe.

5 cut - mustn't - People - trees - down - the.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

This was a beautiful river, (because) there is pollution in it now. SB

2 Lama likes tea (so) coffee.

3 Hazem is sick, (but) he will see a doctor.

4 Ola is so happy (and) she passed the exam.

5 I have a headache (but) a fever.

They like reading, (so) they don't like swimming.

We must take our umbrella (and) it's raining now.

Omar has a cold, (but) he can't go to school.

9 (So) I was ill, I took a day off.

She was tired, (because) she couldn't run fast.

Punctuate the following:

There are lots of different habitats in egypt

When people learn about wildlife they want to protect it

Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"The Ras Mohammed National Park"

fantastic area - Sinai Peninsula



HEVEN (

Vocabulary

(successful (odj.)	i	similar (adj)	مسابه
careful (odj.)	راحريص	real (adj)	حمم
sensible (odj)	J	New	
Feathers	ريش	proverbs	أمثال
description	وصف	well-known (odj.)	محروف
true	حقيقي	exactly	بالصبط
meaning	معتي	worm	دوده
large (adj.)	كبير	strange (adj.)	غريب
nest	عش	plans	حطظ

Pronunciation

two syllables

ea-gles
weath-e
fal-con
 care-ful
tour-ism
E-gypt

three syllables:

king-fish-er
pel-i-can
fla-min-go
suc-cess-ful
snor-kel-ing
im-por-tant

Language Focus

must/mustn't

، تكملة الجملة + النصل في المصدر (.must + (inf + النامل) Subject (اندامل) + must +

We must bring a tent.

. تكبية الجملة + النمل في المصدر (-Subject (Justi) + musm't + (inf

We mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

If (First Conditional)



If I am hungry, I w II eat a snack

If he doesn't leave now, he'll miss the bus.



		 -
Lesson 1		
2000011	باحح	بانه
	مهتم/حريص	طفى
	حقیفی	ال
	ریش	ية.
	بالصبط	õ
	كىير	L.
	عش	الط
	معروف	رۇ
Lesson 2		
Ecoson G	السياحة البيئية	لی
	سکن بسیط	ۍ هور
	صور فونوعرافيه	هو ر ع فصائل
	رحلات	طس
	تارىحى	عب لمرجانية
Lesson (3)		
	ىسر	äs
	طائر السمام	ر الرفراف
	رحله طويله	مال إفريقيا مال إفريقيا
	طيور البحام	پره فارون
	يعادر	ـر حري ب (فطيع)
	,	(6-7-
Lessons 485		
	مدويه	المعشة الحنوانات
	شبه حريرة سيباء	
	مرحئا	٠.

عمامه

محمية رأس محمد الوطنية



صعر

سكان محليون

WRITING TIME



How to write about Eco-tourism:

- o Eco-tourism is + (نعریمها)
- (أهم ما يميرها) + Ir's ه
- ه It's designed to + (أهميتها للطبيعة)
- People stay in + (الأماكن التي يسكن فيها الناس ووصفها)
- (ذكر شيء من الأشباء التي تدمر البيئة) + They mustn't

Eco-tourism is a way of travelling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution. Many people like wildlife watching and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

How to write about bird migration:

- ه Many birds migrate + (ذكر سبب الهجرة)
- These birds eat + (ذكر ما بأكله الطيور المائية المهاحرة)
- Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see + (اسمر الطيور المتواجدة هناك)
- وصف الهجره) +Some birds و

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt and across it searching for a warmer place, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts. Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, bases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos. Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year.

How to write a blog about animal habitats:

- Hello, I'm + الاسم welcome to my blog!
- اسم الموضوع + I'm writing today about
- Animals need +
 اذكر الأشياء التي تحتاج إليها الحيوانات للعيش
- There are lots of different habitats in Egypt + قطاء

Hello, I'm Ali. welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about animal habitats. I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe place to live, find food, and look after their babies. There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, rivers.

Unit 10

STUBENTS BOOK CORNER

Complete the sentences with must or mustn't:

You respect nature.

You scare birds or animals.

You leave trash in the desert.

You . be careful in the natural environment.

You walk to school today because there are no buses

You walk in the desert when it's hot.

Complete the text using the prepositions in the box:

close - migrate - respect - similar - sustainable - wild

When	people	the	environment,	they	want	to	protect	ít.
			4					

If you go bird-watching, you mustn't get too

to the birds.

3 Eco-tourism is more ______. than vacations which don't care about

the environment.

When we visited the National Park, we saw many animal

5 Many birds to find warmer weather in winter.

6 Things that are look the same or do the same things.

Complete the sentences:

If I (have) an important exam next term, I () for it

2 If you (go) to bed late tonight, you (not/get up)

early tomorrow.

3 If Omar (play) football for two hours, he (be)

tired!

deadline.

4 If she (feel) thirsty, she (drink) some water.

5 If we (not/work) together, we (miss) the



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Next month, Salma is going on a

(a. journey - b. picnic - c. tour - d. trip)

2 We'll travel along the river in small ...

(a. cars – b. boats – c. ships – d. buses)

3 We'll camp in at night.

(, tents - b. houses - c. accommodation - d. apartments)

We'll bring our , because we'll see some amazing things

(1. ceil phones - b. tablets - c cameras - d. computers)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

On eco-tourism vacations, we stay in

a) large hotels b) big apartments c) simple accommodation d) small tents to be you need to be the first to do something.

a) similar b) care

c) scary

d) successful

There are often large

of water birds near lakes and bases.

d) fish

a) flocks b) f

b) falcons

c) flamingoes

4 Migrating birds fly very distances.

a) short b) small

e) sol

d) long

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

reefs - respect - snorkel - eat - Sinai

Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Sama. I'm going on a vacation with my family. We're going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, brightly colored fish there, as well as coral reefs

The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips. I'm very excited!

Choose	the	correct	answer	from	a.b.	c.	or	d:
4110000			-		-, -,	, -,		

- 1 The general idea of the text is about ...
 - a) Sama's vacation
- b) Sama's birthday
- c) Sama's family
- d) Sama's school
- 2 The tour is only a week.
 - a) one day

b) three days

c) four days

- d) two days
- 3 The underlined verb "set off" means
 - a) 90

- b) come back c) sleep
- d) study

Answer the following questions:

- 4 Where is Sama going?
- Why is the tour only on Monday and Wednesday?



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

flock - a - together B rds - feather - of.

- doesn't Eco tour sm the damage environment.
- mustn't birds scare animals You or

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

too many sweets, you'll feel sick If you (ate)

to your teacher carefully You must (istening)

Punctuate the following:

I'm tarek and this is dalia.

Write a text of about FIFTY(50) words using the following guiding elements:

"An eco-tourism vacation"

Where did you stay? - What did you do to respect nature?











1

Office of the second

AL ASHAR DORMER



Read and complete the dialog:

wildlife - go - What - went - amazing

Youssel · Where did you ... last vacation?

Hani : I ... to the desert.

foussef · did you see there?

Har I saw lots of ; more animals live on the sand than you might think.

Youssel. That's

Read and circle the odd word out:

- I pelican eagle swift flock
- 2 migrate leave kingfisher fly
- 3 bird successful large sensible
- 4 play study feel going
- 5 snorkel dive sustainable respect

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 must nature People respect.
- 2 visiting Omar this loves place.
- 3 bird the worm The early catches.
- very distances Migrating fly birds long.
- 5 are Egypt different There in habitats.



you want to help? الماذا تريد المساعدة؛





voiunteer	منطوع	project	مشروع	community	محتمع
ideas	أعكار	habitats	د ۱۰۱ ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا	kindergarten class	حصالة / ومنه الألما
paint ngs	رسومات	kind to	دانده	organization	doniga

	11 6					
	called ray,	الدعى السم	vegetable graden	حديقة خضراوات	fresh	طارج
	popular (27)	محبوب/شائع	trash	dolai	habitats	أماكن المعيشة
	safer (أكثر أماثا	skills	مهارات	nervous (naj)	متوتر
	own (i.i.)	خاص	neighbor	جار	stores	المتأجر
t	alone	يممردها	great	راثع	difficult	صعب

تمريش الأضمال Conjugation of verbs

	Regular verbs			أفعيال منتظمة	
p. fiz fall	-	Fast	Present	1	Past
support	يدعمر	supported	volunteer	، يتطوع	volunteered
start	يبدا	started	clean	يتطف	cleaned
decide	يقرر	decided	join	, ينضر	joined
participate	يشارك	participated	train	<u> </u>	trained
paint	يرسعر	pointed	donate	يتبرع	donated
	Irregular verbs			أفعال غير منتظمة	
1-1-46-51		Past	Present		Past
choose	يختار	chose	can	يستطيع	could
grow	6332	grew	teach	يعلبر	taught
think	يعتقد	thought	see	یری	saw

had to	اصطر إلى	so that	نې
an after-school club	نادي ما بعد المدرسة	the younger children	الأطفال الأصغر سئا
a bit nervous	متودر فارأر	get better at	يتحسن ق
it's really good fun	إنها حقًا منعه حياة	take part in	يشارك ق
give away	يمار ع	help out	يمد يده بالمساعدة
start up	سدأو	look forward to	يتطلع إلى



like being	يحب أن يكون	it would be nice to	سيكون من الجميل أن
look nicer	تبدو أحمل	used to	اعتاد أن
look after	پعتنی ب	She'e getting a bit older	إنها تكبر قلنلًا
difficult for	صحب على	go shopping	يذهب للتسوق
went on vacation	دهـ ی إحاره	local children's channy	حمعية حبرية محيية للأطعال

donale	دبرع	to give samething away to help a person or organization للتبرع بشيء لمساعدة شخص أو منظمة	
		النبرع بشيء تمساعدة شخص او منظمة to take part in something	
participate	بشرك	المساهمة (المشاركة) في شيء ما	
support	ید عمر (یساند)	to do things that help a particular person or group القيام بأشياء تساعد شخصًا ما أو مجموعة معينة	
volunteer	محلوع	to do a job or activity and not take any money for it القبام يعمل أو نشاط وعدم أخد أى أموال مقابل ذلك	

- We started a project called Community Help.

بعد بدأيا مشروعا يدعى (نسمي) مساعدة المجتمع

- We choose something to support other people or things in our community - اخترنا شبتًا سعم الأشخاص أو الأشياء الأخرى في مجتمعنا.
- Some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school.

- أراد بعض الأشخاص إنشاء حديقة خضراوات في المدرسة،

- Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the river

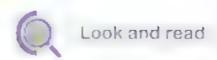
- وتطوع أشحاص آخرون للمساعدة في تتظيف القمامة من النهر.

- I decided to start an after school club to teach the younger chitdren football skills - قررت أن أنشئ ناديًا بعد المدرسة لتعليم الأطعال الصعار مهارات كرة القدم.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 He was very happy to (/) in the project.
- 2 Fm a (Appet of the district of the second
- 3. All likes to (* ** *** ** * * * * * *) people who need help in his community
- © I like buying (* 3) fruits and vegetables.
- 5. We always (I more about a part of the many to the hospital.
- 6 Children under five go to (de la company





hi, I'm Tamer At school, we started a project called Community Help We all had to choose something we could do to support other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer.

مرحبًا، أنا تامن في المدرسة، سأنا عشوه، يسمى مساعدة المجتمع كان عليتنا حديث أن تختار شيئًا ما يعدسا الثيام به بدحم الأشخاص أو الأشباء الآخري في مجتمعيد كان هناك الكثير من الأمكار، على سبين المثان، بعض الناس أالدو إلشاء حديثة للاثية في

تنهيره لكي تكنون أماكين معيشة الحيوانيات أكثير أمائد

I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love sports, so I started an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills. I was a bit nervous at first, but lots of children joined in and their parents were very happy. It was great to have so many children participating.

قررت أنتى أرف مساعدة الأطفال في مدرستي، أن أحب إلى عملة، لسبث أنشأت منت بعد المدرسة لتعبير الأطفال الصعار عها إن كرة القدم القد كنت بتوترا العلمس شيء في البداية، ولكن الضم الكثير من الأطفال، وكان أدة هم سعداء العابة، وكان من الأطفال من الأطفال



I teach the class after school on Wednesdays. The class is for 45 minutes, and we train and play games I like seeing the children get better at football, and it's really good fun, too.

أقوم بتدريس العصل نعب اليوم الدراسي أيام الأربعاء. منة القصل 45 تأيقاء وحن تتدرب وللعب بألعاب أحب رؤية الأنسان وهم يتحسنون في كرة القنم، و حقًا إنه أمر ممتع جنًّا أيضًا:





Reem

I love reading, so I decided to help out in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by reading to the children. I love reading stories with the younger children, and they like it too. We're starting up a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.

أحد يقر مة بين الله الله أن أن أن أن أن عن في روضة الأحسان حصية يوم وتجميس من خبلان بقومة الأحسان أحد قوم يحدون لآنك أيشاء ثحان ثبيداً استنجاز المعارد وهم يحدون لآنك أيشاء ثحان ثبيداً استنجاز المعارد في قصصهم الداصة الأساوع المثنى، أن أتصبع إلى ذلك.



lbrahim

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was saa because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees. Our parents donated lots of toys too. We



took these and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer

عريتمة الشهر المحمىء ولاست في المستشفى، وهم أهمان الآل، ويكن علمم الدها لاست حريبة بسبب ذلك لم تحب الجميس أن تفعيل شيئًا الأطفال المرضي، وسمت أن وأصدقائي الكثير من الصور الكبيرة الرهاور القال الثير من الأعمال أيقيد أحال هية السيحات إلى المشتمى بجعيل العارف تساو أحمل

Mariam

My neighbor has always been kind to us She used to help my mom look after me when I was younger Now sne's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go shopping. So, I ask her what she needs, then I go to the stores and get it. I like to help her.

ئساعد أمى في لاعتب بي عبيب كيث أنبع و سعدت عليت بدهاب بتساوق بديار باحير وأحمل علياء أحب أن أساعتها





Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

0	📣 Listen	and circle	the correct	answer from	a, b, c, or	d:
---	----------	------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	----



1	Youssef	is in	grade	**************************************	
	(a. two	- b.	four -	c. six - d. nine)	

2 They started a project at ..

(a hospital – b. school – c. park – d office)

3 People from the community . to help.

(a. volunteered - b. danced - c. cooked - d. paid)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



l	To "	" is to do things th	at help a particul	ar person or group.
	a) donate	4 1	c) volunteer	d) participate
2	I'm	. forward to working	as a teacher.	
	a) taking	b) looking	c) doing	d) trainig
3	Ali always	in the school	activities.	
	a) looks after	b) takes part	c) gives away	d) decide
4	Parents shoul	d their kic	ls.	
	a) help out	b) look forward	c) look after	d) start up
5	5 People in my community are		a local chil	dren's charity.
	a) donating	b) painting	c) shopping	d) starting out
6	To "	means to give somethi	ing away to help a	person or organization

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

a) volunteer b) support



d) participate

volunteer - neighbor - garden - club - donate

c) donate

People in my community help each other Some people start a vegetable

(1) to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. Some people
(2) to help clean trash from the river. Some people help children in school. They start an after-school
(3) to teach them how to play sports. When a
(4) is old, we help go shopping and get what he needs.



Read the text and answer the questions:



My name is Ola I like to help my community and my friends too. Every Friday I volunteer to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer. I love animals. My friend Amira helps old people It's difficult for them to go shopping, so she asks them what they need and she goes to the stores and gets them it. My friend Hana donates lots of toys to the children's hospital. My friend Laila helps out in the kindergarten. She reads stories to the younger children.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- - a) helping the community
- b) making tous

c) reading stories

- d) helping animals
- 2 The word "volunteer" means doing an activity or a job and not taking any for it.
 - a) food
- b) money
- e) clothes
- d) stories

- 3 Ola cleans trash from the
 - a) beach b) lake
- c) river
- d) sea

Answer the following questions:

- 4 How does Amira help old people?
- 5 What does Hana donate?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



- clean Lara trash volunteers the to.
- 2 donated They toys and clothes the hospita: to
- 3 help out -I kindergarten class at the.
- 4 They animals' wanted to better habitats make.

Punctuate the following:

- I what day is the club
- 2 i help out in the kindergarten class on thursday.



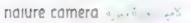


tern print and say

استمع، أشر ومل

Main Vocabulary







grabber con no



مقبيس متعبد الاستحدامات multi-grip

		EXTIG VOC	abatar y	The second second	
gloves	قمارات	trash	قبامة	metal (adj.)	معدق
Stick	لصد	fingers	أصابع	handle	مقبض/ ید
center	مرکز	glass bottle	زجاجة	jors	برصمانات
part	جزه	wildlife	الحياة البرية	forest	غابة
card	بطاقة	арр	تطبيق	exhibition	متعرض قبى
lamonada	111	fridae	2.5191		

Conjugation of verbs المربية الأمعال

	Regular verbs			أفعسال منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
pick up	ياتقط	picked up	protect	يحمى	protected
carry	يحمل	carried	collect	يجمع	collected
close	يعلق	closed	squeeze	يعصر	squeezed
drop	سمط	dropped	volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered
turn	يستدير	turned	install	يركب (يُنشئ)	installed
film	يصور	filmed	record	يسجل	recorded
	lrrequiar verbs			أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	-	Past	Present		Past
wear	پرتدی	wore	hold	يمسك	held
show	يعرض	showed	send	ْ يرسل	sent

Expressions and Phrases

do a beach clean up	بقوائر سطيف الساطي	It's great fun	إنه ممنع حدًا
at the end	ق النهاية	at the top	ق الأعلى
it's better than	إنها أفضل من	volunteer at	يتطوع 🐧
a day center	مرکز بهاری	old people	كيار السن
aren't siror gienough	ليسوا أفوياء بشكل كاف	take off the tops	يجنع / درع الغطاء
do a witdlife project	يفوم بمشروع عن الحياة البرية	on the ground	على الأرص
at night	ق الليل	during the day	آثناء البهار
We've learned a lot!	لقد تعلمنا الكثيرا	sports center	مرکر ریاضی
turn on (the radio)	بشعن (ابرديق	pick up (the phone)	يرقع سماعه السقون

Look and read:

ابطر واقرأ

Tamim

When we do a beach clean-up, we wear gloves to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the trash we collect. And look! We use this to pick up the trash. It's great fun to use It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then drop it in the bag. Mom says it's better than picking things up with your hands.

عيدما يقيوم يتنصيف الشبخل، برئيني قمارات لحماية أبديتنا بحمال أكيائك سوداء للقمامة التي تجمعها والأفرو يجي بستجيم هيم والشاط "غيامة إلها منتجة جيدًا في الإستخدام، ونها عصا معديبة طويلة بأصبعين في به يتهد تعتاج الأصابح وتعدق عبيد الضعيط على المقيض في الأعلى، تقبوم بفتاح وإعبلاق أصابعاك لالتقباط الشامة، ثم تصعها في الكيس تقور أمن إنه أنسل من الثقاط الأشاه ببليك.



Dalida

I volunteer at a day center for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So, they use this to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the day center.

أن متصوع في مركب بهناري بكسر السن، بعيض كيم النس لا يستطيعون فتح الزماحيات والبرطمانيات. أيسهم يست قوية بما فيه الكفاية. بذلك، يستختمون هذا بإرانة «أنطبة هناه هي بطريقه التي تستحمها المحاث ترممان بيد واصبة وضعها في الأعلى. اسبك هذا الديه بينك الأخرى، ثمر قُم بتدويرة. إنه حفُّ سهن الاستعمال أحب أن أشاص هيدا على الأشخاص في المرشر البهاري.



multi-grip

Hamza

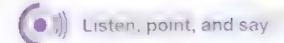
nature camera

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two of these in the forest We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we record how many animals and birds we see, and what they're do ng. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

تحين بقيوم بتنفيت مشيروم تنجيب؟ ﴿ ___ة فين المدرسيَّة، وقيام معتمين بترتيب اللَّيان منها فين (تعالــة، تحين ستعدمها بتصوير الحياة الرية هو وصع واحدة على الأرض لتصوير أ الحات لبلا ووصع الأخرى فير شجرة بتصوير الطبور أثناء النهبر اثبر لسجن عبيد الجروسات والطبور الثني لراها وامادا يتعلبون هندا ملاع







استمع، أشر وقل.

Infinitives of purpose صيغة المصدر للغرض

1 We use "to + a verb in the base form" to explain why we do something

الستحدم (tos 4 مصدر القعل) لشرح سبب قيامنا بشيء ما

to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل بدون أي إضافات) مصدر الفعل بدون

He uses his computer to do his homework.

يستحدم حهار الكمبيوتر أنحاص به لأدء واحداثه عدارسية

We go to the park to play football.

بذهب بلحديقة للعب كرة القدم.

Wn- euestion

2 We also use "to + a verb in the base form" to answer questions with "Why".
ر ستخدم أيضٌ (to + مصدر . نقطله للإجابة عن . الأسئلة د ولعادله.

A. Why do you use a multi-grip?
 B. To open jars.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Eman went to the shopping mall (as -with for to) buy clothes
- 2 They have pencils to (painting paint paint paint of the picture.
- 3 (Why Who What When) did your uncle go to Cairo? B: To visit my grandma.
- 4 I use a key to (closes c osed = c os ng close) the door.
- 5 She uses a wildlife camera (to = for so and) film animals
- 6 Ahmed goes to the cinema to (watch = watch ng watches = watched) movies
- 7 (What Which Why = Where) do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up?
 B: To protect my hands.
- 8 They travel to Alexandria to (vis t visits = vis ting v sited) their grandparents.



game console	وحدة الألعاب	controller	وجدات التحكم
button	ند	joystick	عصا انتحكم

			and the latest the lat		
part	جزه	cool (adj.)	رنع	character	شحصية
home buttons	زر القائمة الرئيسية	menu	فائمه	action button	رر الحركة
directions	انحاهات	information	معبومات	internet	شبكة الإنتربت
essays	مقالات	handle	لمفتض	movies	أفلامر

Conjugation of works

	Regular verbs			أمعيال منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
press	يضغط	pressed	happen	يحدث	happened
control	يتحكم	controlled	photocopy	ينسخ صورة	photocopied

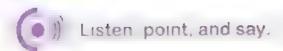
Expressions and Phrases

	-		
It looks great.	هدا يبدو رائع.	What's this part for?	لأى غرض هذا الجزء؟
takes you back	تعود بك إلى	move around	كان
That's right.	هذا صحيح	play games	يلعب الألعاب
watch movies	يشاهد الأقلام	find information	يجد معنومات
Write essays	يكتب المقالات	do homework	يؤدى الوجب العبرلي
photocopy paper	يىسخ الأوراق	use for	يستخدمي من أجل
go over	يمر من أعلى	turn on	يشغل (جهارًا)
on the internet	على شبكة الإنترنت		

Definitions

)		
button	رو	A button is something you press to make something happen سر هو شيء تصغط عليه تبجيل هيانا بحدث
joystick	غصا التحكم	A joystick is something you can move in different directions to control a computer game.
controller	الموجّه / وحدة التحكم	A controller is something we use to play a computer game وحدة شحكم هن شن السخدمة للعب لعبة كمبيور.

joystick



Hi Amira Is this your new games console? It looks great. What's this part for?

Arnira Oh, that's the controller. It's what you use to play the game.

أوه، قد هو جها التحكم، قد سائستجابه بنعب بنعث

M.m · Cool! And what does this do?

Am ra Those are the action buttons. You use them to tell your character to run, jump, or do other actions.

اللك هي أن را محوكات، يمكنك متحمامها وإحمار شخصيتك بالجرى أو القمر أو القيام وإمراء ٢٠ أباي

Mom And what are these parts for?

ول عربي هذه الحرارة

أيو وما يعمل هدار

controller

جه شکم

Amira They're the joysticks. They help you move your character around

راي سعد التحتمر باري تساعدك عبر ، تحريك تتحصيناه .

OK So, the home button takes you back to the menu, and the buttons and jousticks are for playing the game.

بعم. بداء فإن بن الصفحة الرئيسية يعيدك إلى الدُّئية، والأن يا وعصا التحكم محصصة لبعب البصة.

Amira That's right Do you want to play a game with me?

هذا صحيح، هل تريد أن تلعب بعثة معي؟



People use this to play games or watch movies. You can use it to find information on the internet. You can also write essays and do your homework on it. You can't photocopy paper with it.

تترنث، بحسك أيشًا كمانة المقارت والشام ماحياتك السرائية عليه، لا يمشك شموير علورق به

That's the part that goes over your ears

هذا هو احره الذي يمر فوق أدنيك.

This is the handle. It helps you control where you want to go.

هذا هو العقسور، يساعدك على الحكم في المكان الذي تريد الدهاب إليه،

This turns on the radio

هدا يشعل الرديوء

You can use this to swim under water

يمكنك استحدام هذا للساحة ثجث الماءر



button .

swimming

mask



Lesson 2



Remembering • Understanding Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

		ect answer from a, b	
		Or	people.
	g - b. old - c. sho	1 1 2	
	d people how to o		with a multi-grip
	*	- c. jars – d. bags)	
	trash up with a		
	_	c. multi-grip – d. hand	i)
	ber is very		
(a. easy	~ b. hard − c. bac	d — a. annoying)	
Choose the	correct answer f	rom a, b, c, or d:	
		in the forest	
	ers b) televisions		d) tablets
		to open gla	
3 A		c) gloves	_
	b) stick	you press to make so	
			d) for
the	love in different di	rections to control a co	mputer game with
	h) home	2):-	15
	b) button	c) grip	d) joystick
		the tras	
		c) help out	
		ontrol where you want	
a) handle		c) stick	d) camera

nead and complete the text with the words in the box:

gloves - clean-up - grabber - stick - plastic

I'm Sara. I live in Alexandria I do a beach (1) with my friends every weekend. We always wear (2) to protect our hands. We carry bags for the trash that we collect. We also use a (3)................. to pick up the trash. The grabber is a long metal (4) with two fingers at the end I really enjoy my weekends.

school - We're - a wildlife - at - project - doing.	
2 nands - Iney - gloves - to protect - wear - their.	
3 for - this - What - use - do - you?	
4 records — "ne — pirds — nature camera — animals — and.	
Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:	8
They make cupcakes (for) sell in the market.	
2 (What) do use a grabber? B To pick up the trash.	
3 She uses a key to (opens) the door.	
4 He went to the shopping mall to (bought) a jacket.	
5 We volunteer (because) help old people	
6 He bought two tickets to (watching) the movie	
7 I went to the sports center to (playea) volleyball.	
8 Why did Mom use an app? B (For) learn French.	
O Punctuate the following:	2
what are these buttons for	
2 farah traveled by bus to see her cousins	
Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:	5
"Beach clean-up"	
· I volunteer to pick up the trash	



Lesson 3





من الرائع رد الج<mark>ميل للمجتمع</mark>



Listen, point, and say

استمع، أشر ومن

interview	مفانية شخصية	volunteering	البطوع	community	المحيمح
fundraising	حمع الترعاب	timetable	حدوب زمی	charity	حمعية حبرته
rewarding (adj.)	مُجزِ	citizens	مواطنون	confidence	، الثقة

volunteer	عبطوع	leader	فائد	event	حدث
trip	رحبه فضيرة	hard (odj.)	صعب	healthy diet	يطام عباق بسحي
advice	تصيحة	teenagers	مراهفون	friendly (adj.)	3939
abilities	قدرات	donations	تبرعات	life skills	مهارات حياتية
excellent (adj.)	ممتاز	kindly	بمطف	patiently	بصبر

	Regular verbs			أفسال منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
welcome	پرخت د	welcomed	participate	يشارك	part cipated
organize	ينظعر	organized	deliver	يوصل	delivered
volunteer	يبطوع	volunteered	SOCIOHZE	بكون علاقات احتماعية	socia ized
co lect	بحمع	collected	receive	تستمر / يستمثل	rece ved
donate	يتبرع	donated			
	Irregular verbs			أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
begin	يبدأ	began	become	يصبح	became
meet	يقابل	met			

Expressions and Phrases

after-school volunteer group	مجموعة تطوعية بعدالمدرسة	ever since = since then
16-year-old Rawan	روان د ب السادسة عشرة عامًا	help out
sports events	أحداث رياصية	interested in
That sounds like difficult	هدا بندو صعبًا	rewarding work
isn't like	لیس کمثل	give back
spend time with	بقضى وفئا مع	a friendly way
collect money for	يحمع أموالًا من أحل	feel sure about
if you can	إذا استطعت	came first
running race	سناق الحرى	children's day center

Definitions

socialize	spend time with people in a friendly way	أن تقضى الوقت مع الناس بطريقة ودية
confidence	feeling sure about your abilities	الشعور بالثقة حول فدرانك
fundraising	collecting money for a charity	جمع المال للأعمال الحبرية
give back	to help others because you have received	so much أن تساعد الآخرين لأنك تلفيت الكثير

- Rawan Ibrahim is a community volunteer leader.

روان إبراهيم هي فائده تصوعية مجتمعية.

مند دلك انحن

يمد يد المساعدة

احتل المركز الأول

مركر الأطفان بصبحي

مهتمر بـ... عمن محرٍ يرد الجميل نظر نفه ودوده بشعر ناشفه

- Rawan started volunteering when she was 13

- بدأت روان العمل الطوعي عبدما كان عمرها ١٣ عامًا.

- Rawan began by helping the younger children with their reading and writing. بدأت روان بمساعدة الأطفال الصغار في القرامة والكتابة.

- Now she organizes the volunteers for fundraising activities. الله تنظم المتطوعين الأنشطة جمع البرعات.

This year, Rawan started volunteering with Food Box, a charity that delivers healthy meal boxes to families who need help.

هذا العام، بدأت روان العمل النظوعي مع «Food Bax» فود يوكس، وهي مؤسسة خيرته نفوم تنوصين صياديق الوحيات الصحية بتعاثلات بني تجتاح إلى المساعدة.

Shock point

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 (Kids Ch dren Teenagers Od people) are people from age 13 to 19
- 2 We should be good and helpful (citizens friends students volunteers) for our community
- 3 A/An (organization event charity playground) is a place which provide help to people who need.
- 4 Studying hard for your school subjects is (friendly rewarding healthy sure) work
- 5 (Community Tr ps Diet Volunteering) gives you confidence and helps to socialize





isten, read, and role-play:

استمع أقرأ وبيادل الأدوار:



Today we are talking about volunteering in the community, and here is a community volunteer leader. Rawan Ibrahim. Rawan, welcome! Can you tell us how you started volunteering?

ا تحددات سوم على العدن التطوعي في العجاميع ومعنا فيناً فالبد عنظوم مجتمعين، زوان برافيهم، رواداء مرحات الصاربينيية أن تجورت تنظاميدأت العمل بالطوعي)؟

I first started volunteering when I was 13 at an after-school volunteer group. I began by helping the younger children with their reading and writing. I loved working with them, and I've volunteered ever since.



لدات العمل اشتوعي مول مرة علمما كان عمريُّ ١٣ عامًّا في مجموعة تطولية لعد المدرسة. بدايت بمساعدة والعمال الصلعاء في الكوافة والكتابة أأحبيت العمل معهم والصوعث فساردت الحيل،



Presenter

Since then, 16-year-old Rawan has participated in many school and community projects. Now she volunteers in the Summer Schools Activity Group every summer In the group, Rawan helps out with the children's activities, like sports events and trips to parks and museums. She also organizes the volunteers for fundraising activities. Rawan, how do you find time to do all these things?

ير عاش المتاريخ إلى من علم الأعامُ في تعديد من تعشيره المداسية والمجتمعية، وهن مجموعة أشبطة النسارس الصبطية ثل صبف وفي المحمومة، تساعد روان في أبشطة الأصفاء، ينة و يحدث إلى العشرونات والمتاجين، كما أنها شظور المتعومين لأنشيمه حمع شيرعات المسي يوفية الشام بكل هذه وكل وا

It was hard at first, but I wrote a timetable to help me and then it was easy. And this year, I started volunteering with Food Box, a charity that delivers healthy meal boxes to famil'es who need help. I became interested in Food Box because my mom volunteers there.



الصامر ، بيدات العصل البطوعي منع 4000 80x0 فيود لوكس، وهي مؤسسة خيرية لهنام عدو 10 وحداث للعابيلات التي تحتيج إلى الفسياعدة القبد اصبحات مهتما يستود بوكس «£ nod Box» دن والدثي



-

Presenter

That sounds ke difficult but rewarding work.

يبدو هذا عملًا صعبًا ولكنه مجزٍ،

Volunteering isn't ike work. It's so much fun: At Food Box, I'm earning a of about healthy food and what makes a healthy diet. I love delivering the food boxes and helping the children to be good citizens. Helping children makes me happy

العمل التطوعي بيس مجرد عمل، إنه ممتع بنعاية؛ في فود نوكس، أن تعلم الكثير عن الطعام الصحي وما الذي يجعل السفام العدائي صحياً، أحيا توصيل صناديق الصعام ومساعدة الأطفال على أن يكونوا مواطليل صالحين، مساعدة الأطفال تجعللي أشعر بالسعادة



You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you tive. My advice to teenagers is "Volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!"

أنت تتعلم العديد من المهارات الحيائية المهمة عدما تنظوع، تتعلم كيفية التواصل الحتناعي والتحدث مع الأشخاص الذين لا تقابلهم عادةً، كما يسحك العمل التطوعي الثقة، إنه لأمر منها أن يرى كيف تتمو ثقة المراهقين عندما يبدعون العمل التطوعي، يساعد حمم الترعات المؤسسات الحيرية في الحصول على الأموال التي تحتاجها، من الجيد أن ترد الجميل للملان الدى تعدش البه، صيحتي للمراهقين هي وتطوع وساعد إذا استطعت، سوف تستمتع بها»







Adverbs are used to describe how things happen or are done.

تستحدم وأدون وصف تيمية حدوث الأشياء،

99 He runs quickly.

We can make adverbs by adding:

المعظم الصفات أياث





Adverbs can come after the verb:

She danced beaut fully

رقصت بشكل حمين،

Adverbs can come before the verb:



He quiety talked to his friend.







The adverbs can't come between the verb and its object

She quickly learned the rules.

Sne learned the rules quickly

She learned quickly the rules.



Check point

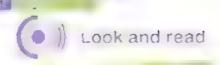
Choose the correct answer:

- He drove his car (fast fasted fasting fasts)
- 2 They talked (angry hungry angr ly x nd)
- 3 Yara waited (patient quickly patiently hard) for her friends to come
- 4 I studied (hard kind quet bad) for my exam
- 5 He sang (beautiful beauty beaut fully angry) at the party
- 6 He painted his house really (good well best kind)
- 7 They were very (happing quietly happy angrily)
- 8 She (quet patent kind quetly) sat in the library
- 9 Adam was late, so he had to run (nappy angry quiet quickly)
- 10 The exams were very (well hard patient beautful)



شَمْیِمَان ، مکافأتان Two Brothers, Two Rewards

e)))) Listen and	say				أسمع وقل
	J.	Main yes	abeler y		
reward		مكافأة	seed		ۇر.
gold		ذهب	silver		4.2
jealous (adj.)		حمود	sparrow		صفور
		London Line	- Standard		
village	قرية	rich (adj.)	غق	money	مال
broken (adj.)	مكسور	little (odj.)	صعبر (قلس)	strong (ad.)	<u>عوی</u>
again	مجدرا	thick (adj.)	سميك	alone	وحيدا
		enjogation of w			
Regu	lar ver			أفعسال منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
share	بارك	shared یت	care	يهتمر	cared
plant	8	planted عند	reply	يرد	replied
reach	ل	reached	disappear	يختفى	disappeare
Irregu	lar ve	rbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
grow		س grew	cut	يقطع	cut
catch	سك	=ı caught	break	يكسر	broke
		Expression	and Phras		
The richest man		أغنى رجل	One day,		رمًا مح .
a broken wing		جناح مكسور	Don't worr	'y,	ىغلى،
look after = care for		پستنی بـ	fly away		طير بعيث
cut one open clim b up		قطع واحدة وفتحها يتسلق	Here is look for		بصل حث عن
go back		تعود	look down	ı	حب س
Definitions			,		
		feeling unhappy b	ecause some	one has what you	want
jealous	1				الشعور بالتعاسة لأن شخا
reward	-	something you get	for doing a	good job or bein	ig he pful



The Seginning

Once, there were two brothers who were very different. The older brother was the richest man in the village. He was rich, but he always wanted more money. The younger brother wasn't rich, but he was kind and shared what he had with his friends

ما سية مع اصدقائه

I TO MICE.

One day, the younger brother found a bird with a broken wing. "Don't worry, little bird," he said "I will look after you" He cared for the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said, "You can fly away now." "First, I want to give you a reward," said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me."

The brother planted the seed and watched it grow into a huge plant with big, orange vegetables. When the brother cut one open, it was full of gold and silver! He was now the richest man in the village!

كانت ملينة بالدهب والعصة؛ الآن أصبح أغس رجل في القرية!

The older brother was jealous. He went to his brother's house, and his brother told him about the bird. The next day, the older brother caught a sparrow and broke its wing. He said, "I'll look after you, then you can give me a reward." He looked after the bird, and when it was strong, he said, "Now I want my reward." The little bird replied, "Here is your reward. Plant this seed and look after it well."

، د ، ب ع فرهب نے بی جیے م ن یہ یہ بارہ ۳۵ میں عید هذہ البدرۃ واعسی بھا چیدائہ

Test (1905)

The older brother planted the seed, and soon a thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon. The brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward. But when he reached the moon, the plant disappeared. He was alone, and he couldn't go back.

The older brother didn't find any gold. So now, he looks down from the moon, and watches his kind, younger brother living happily and helping others.

يعيش في سعادة ويساعد الأخريان،



Choose the correct answer:

- 1 What did the older brother always want?
- 2 What did the bird give the younger brother?







Listen, point, and say:

استمع أشر وفل





/tch/

.



catch



kitchen



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

Ch	oose the corr	ect answer from	a, b, c, or d:	1
1	To feel sure ab	out your abilities n	neans "	<i>H</i>
		-		d) volunteering
	B L	means collecting	money for a char	rity
	a) Interview	b) Rewarding	c) Fundraising	d) Community
3	Make alan	and fol	low it to make yo	our work easier.
	a) timetable	b) organization	c) charity	d) event
4				make new friends.
		b) receive		
5				ou have received so m
		b) care for	Lie	
б				at you want, you are
		b) little		
r				good job or being hel
		b) reward		
) , W		
	a) chop	b) cook	c) catch	d) wash
9	•	waited for th		
	_	b) happy		a) patiently
10		" is to spend tir		
		b) fundraising	1	
Re		ete the text with		
	·	- socialize - confid		

I'm Omar. I really like (1) . I learn many important (2) when I volunteer. I learn how to (3) and make friends with people who I don't usually meet Volunteering gives me (4) too. It is also good to give back to my community and help it get the money it needs.

Read the text and answer the questions:

My favorite story is "Two Brothers, Two Rewards". It's about two brothers. The older brother was very rich. The younger brother wasn't rich. The younger brother found a bird with a broken wing. The younger brother cared for the bird all winter. The bird became strong again, and it gave the man a reward. It was a seed. He planted in the garden, and the seed grew, and it was full of gold and silver. The older brother was jealous, he wanted a reward too, so he broke a bird's wing. The bird gave him a seed, but the seed made him reach the moon and be alone.



		Chance the secret second forms to a sud-	
		Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: The story is about two	
ì		a) sisters b) friends c) brothers d) cou	sins
i	2	2 The younger brother wasn't	
i		a) rich b) happy c) kind d) poo	or
	3	3 The younger brother found a bird with a broken	*
		a) hand b) foot c) nose d) wir	ng
		Answer the following questions:	
	4	4 What did the bird give the younger brother?	
	E	5 How did the older brother feel?	
0	D	ut the would in the course and a to make an are	
-		ut the words in the correct order to make sentences:	4/
	1	the - talked - They - quietly - classroom - in.	
ı	2	help - you - Volunteer - can - if - and.	
{.}	7	the guiter. Che heavatully alone and the summe	
	3	the guitar She - beautifully - plays - and - the piano.	
	4	volunteering - first - When - she - start - did?	
-			
C	Re	ead and write the correct form of the word(s) between brack	cets:
1	1	I think if I study (hard y) , I will pass the exa	m
	2	They waited (patient) for the bus.	
	3	He sang (beautiful) at the wedding.	
ı	4	Please, could you speak (quiet) ? I have a he	eadache
ī	5	Ola wrote (fasting) in her book.	
	6	They were late, so they walked (quick)	
ı	7	They shouted (angry) at each other.	
		Adam doesn't like playing footbal He plays (bad)	
0	D.,		-
O	Pu	unctuate the following:	2
5	1 2	the older brother was jealous	
	2	how did you start volunteering	

3.7



Writing & Project





استمع وقل

biography	سبرة دانيه	volunteering	التصوع.	volunteer event	حدث تطوعي
charity event	حدث حیری	social sciences	انعلوم الاحتماعية	fundraising event	حدث جمع تبرعات
community worker	باشط جيماعي	environment	البيئة	fundraiser	جامع التبرعات

elder (adj.)	أكبر سأًا	neighbor	حار	shopping	ائسوق
preparatory school	مدرسه إعدادي	university	حامعه	playground	ملعب
award	حائزة / مكافأة	timeline	حط رسی	waste	محلفات
local ad 1	محل	boring (adj.)	ممن	surprised (adj)	مندهش
children's charity	حمعيه حبريه للأطفال	plastic (adj)	ىلاستېكى		

Conjugation of verbs (Leading Line)

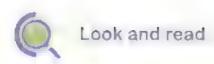
	Regular verbs			وسال منتظماة	
Present		Past	Present		Past
organize	يبطم	organized	raise	يجمع النبرعات	raised
reduce	يملل	reduced	respect	يحترم	respected
call	يتصل	called	recycle	يعيد التدوير	recycled
protect	يحمى	protected	offer	بعرص	offered

Expressions and Phrases

do jobs for them	نقوم بالمهام من أجلهم	make the world a bette	er place يحعل العالم مكانًا أفصل	
polite to	مؤدب مح	ways to	طرق ل	
run a charity for	پدېر جمعيه حيرية ل	date of birth	تاريح العبلاد	
so successful that	ناجح حدًا لدرجة أن	"2020 Community Worker" award الناشط المجتمعي نعام ۲۰۲۰		
raise money for	يحمع البرعاب ل	Youth Give Back	حركة الشباب لرد الحميل	
was born in	ۇلدق	as a child	كملقل	
participate in	ىشارك ق	ealry life	حياته المنكرة	







انظر واقرأ

Fareeda Hassan: A Biography

الحياة المبكرة Early Life

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy ner elder neighbors' shopping.

وبدن قريدة حس أن الإسكندرية عام ١٩٩٤. عندما كانت طفلة، ساعدت فريدة والدنها في شراء مشتريات حيرانها الأكبر سأل

التموج في البدرية Volunteering at School

Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.

١٠. نظمت أول حدث حيري بها تتوسيل مباديق الطعام للعائلات في المحتمع،

The University Years مسوات الجامعة

In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground.

العمل في الجمعيات الحيرية Working in Charities

In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer leader in Cairo Since then, she has helped many people. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

في عام ٢٠١٤، بدأت مريدة مطبنتها الأولى كقائدة متصوعة مجتمعية في القاهرة، ومنذ ذلك الحيورة ساعدت التثير من الناص، في عام ٢٠٢٠، قادت مشاروع ماعداد العامل المجتمعي لعام مصر، وقد حقيق نماخًا كبيرًا ندرجة أنها فارت بحائزة العامل المجتمعي لعام ٢٠٢٠، واليوم، تديو مأسسة حديدة الأعدال

How to write a biography

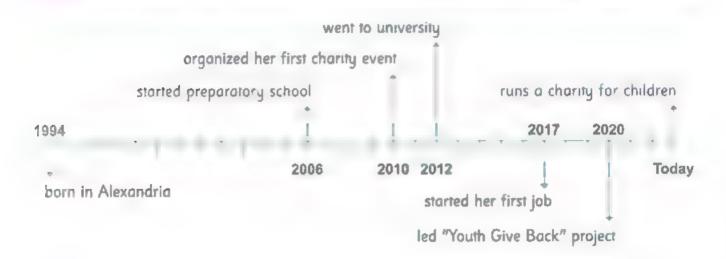
- Write the information in date order
- Include events with dates.
- Divide the information into sections
- Add headings for each section.
- Write in the past tense.

اكتب المعلومات بالمرتب الرمان، اشتمل على الأحداث مع الثواريخ، فشمر المعلومات إلى أفسام أضف عنواناً لكل قسم، اكتب في زمن الماضى البسيط.

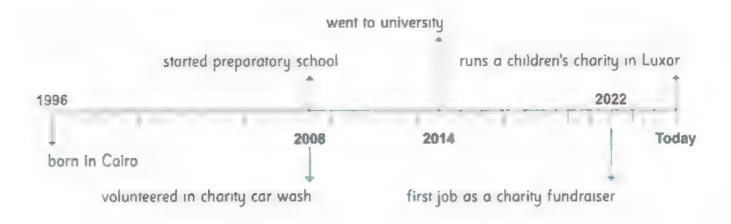
Tip!

When writing a biography, it helps to make a timeline of events, starting from the date of birth. Add important events and their dates to the timeline. This helps you organize the information in the correct order.

الجدول الزمني، وهذا يساعدك على تنظيم المعبومات بالترثيب الصحيح،

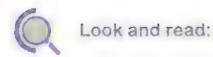


Plan a biography for Fares Shawky. Create a timeline in your book using the information below.



Fares Shawky: A biography





انظر واقرأ

طرق لتكون مواطن صالح Ways to Be a Good Citizen

There are lots of ways you can volunteer to help your community.

هدك الكثير من الصرق التي يمكنك خلالها التطوع لمساعدة مجتمعك.

Respect Others: Be polite and kind to your neighbors. Help people who are old or sick. Call your neighbors to ask how you can help. You can offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home.



احترم الأخريان: كن مهدئا ولطيفًا مع جيرانك. ساعد الأشخاص المسئين أو المرضى، التصل بجيرانك وأسألهم كيف يمكنك المساعدة. يمكنك عرض القيام بالتسوق أو القيام

بالوطائف بهم في المترل.

Help the Community: Volunteer at a local charity event or help out on a community project. Volunteering isn't boring. It's interesting You'll be surprised how much you enjoy it.

de discission de con

Protect the Environment: Reduce waste and help the environment. Don't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, recycle them. Let's all be good citizens and make the world a better place!

أخير البيشة: قدل اسفيدان وسأعد البيشة. لا تستخدم الأثياس البلاستيكية. إذا كان لدياك رجات بلاستيكية في المنازل، أعد تدويرها. لنكن جميعًا مواطنين صالحين ونجعل العالم مكاتُ أفضل!





- Remembering • Understanding Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

0	Choose	the	correct	answer	from	a, l	b, c,	or d	1



1	Fareeda Hassa	n was	in Alexandri	a.
	a) organized	b) reduced	c) called	d) born
2	Be	and kind to	your neighbors.	
	a) bad	b) annoying	c) angry	d) polite
3	Fareeda organi	zed a fundraisin	g event to to	money for a new playground.
	a) offer	b) respect	c) raise	d) call
e.j.	If you have pla	istic bottles at h	ome,	them.
	a) protect	b) raise	b) recycle	d) organize
5	Today, Fareedo	2	a charity for child	dren.
			c) does	
6	Young people s	should help	people.	
	a) elder	b) bad	c) boring	d) important
7			It's interesting.	
	a) good	b) well	c) boring	d) nice
8				O Community Worker" award.
	a) surprised	h) successful	c) interesting	d) nolite

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



river - volunteer - neighbors - waste - environment

Read the text and answer the questions:



Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping. In 2006, she participated in her first volunteer event She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here, she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1 Fareeda started her first volunteer event in a) 1994 b) 2006 d 2012 d) 2020 2 Fareeda organized a fundraising event to raise for a new playground. d) books a) clothes b) tous c) money 3 Now, Fareeda runs a for children. b) hospital a) school d) playground c) charity Answer the following questions: 4 What project did Fareeda lead in 2020? 5 What award did Fareeda win? Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 1 Volunteering - is - boring, - interesting - isn't - it. 2 in Alexandria - Fareeda Hassan - born - was - 1994 - in. 3 waste - Reduce - help - and - environment - the. 4 polite - to - Be - kind - your neighbors - and. Punctuate the following: 1 What award did fareeda win? 2 let's all be good citizens Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: "A biography of a famous community worker" (Who are they? - What do they do?)



Vocabulary

volunteer ومنطق project ومنطقة project ومنطقة project ومنطقة project ومنطقة project ومنطقة project ومنطقة paintings ومنطقة (المعيشة kind to (adj.) ومنطقة organization

Language Focus

We use "to + a verb in the base form" to explain why
we do something

(الفعن سون أي إطافات مصدر الفعل (nt) + (nt

He uses his computer to do his homework.

We also use "to + a verb in the base form" to answer "
questions with "Why"

A: Why do you use a multi-grip?

B To open jars.

3. Adverbs are used to describe how things happen or are done

We can make adverbs by adding:

البعيناد المظله (وأو)

quick → quickly

السفاد المنتهة مرفره سالين و بندوس حلف الدنيا ماخيانة (دار)

angry — angrily
happy happy

. جيش للمظلف أد البيد الثامية (Armgular)

fasi → fasi







CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



حدث جمع ببرعات

باشط احتماعي

اسئة

Lesson 1				
	قمامة		رسومات	متطوع
	متوتر		طیب مع	مشروع
	حاص		مؤسسة	محتمع
	حار		حديقة حصراوات	فكار
	المتاجر		طارح	يئات / أماكن المعيشة
			محبوب	تضانة / روضة الأطفال
sson (2)				
	•	ففارات		ِجاج زجاج
		مركر		اميرا الحياة البرية
		مثطوع		عدن
	تحدامات	مقبص متعدد الإس		عصر
		الأرص		رطمانات
		لاقط (حطاف)		صا
		مَّالة		حياة ،لرية
sson 🔞				
	مال		فصة	مقابلة شحصية
	ڏهپ		يلىقط	تطوع
	سميك		ىقدى	محتمع
	سعينة		صدف	بمع الشرعات
	القمر		حباح	حتلف
	صحم		حمعية حبرية	كافأة
	يصل		مُحرى	يران
	مكسور		مواطبون	ىنى
	عى		الثقة	علىاق
ssons \	N)			
Soura Give		*	_	
		جامع الشرعات		يرة دانة
		أكبر سنًا		عطوع
		مدرسه إعدادي		ىدث تطوعى
		حامعة		دث حیری
		محلفات		علوم الإحتماعية
		4		

ممل

مندهش

جمعية خبرية للأطفال

WRITING TIME



How to write about Community Help Projects:

Answer these questions:

- Where did you start the project?
- 2 Why did you start it?
- What were the ideas for the project?
- 4 What did some people choose to do?
- 5 What did you choose to do?

At school, we started a Community Help project. We started it to support other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas, like starting a vegetable garden at school or volunteering to dean trash from the river. Some people chose to clean up the trash so that anima s' habitats are safer. I chose to start an after-school club to teach children football skills.

How to write about tools we use to help the community:

- When we + محال مساعدة المحتمع + we use
 أسعر الإداة +
- . وصف الإداة + £ 1 2
- . فيما تستحدم ذلك الأداة + We use it to
- . طريقة استحدام الأداة 4

When we do a beach clean-up, we use the grapher. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. We use it to pick up the trash. It's great fun to use. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then you drop it in the bag.

How to write a biography:

- اسعر مكان وسنة الميلاد + was born in + اسعر الشحص
- He/She started school in + سنة الدراسة.
- He/She first + مدانة أعماله المعيرة.
- In + تاريخ , + he / she + تاريخ .
- « Today, he/she + المجال الذي يعمل به الآن.

Foreeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. She started preparatory school in 2006. She first participated in volunteer events in the same year when she and a team did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to the community. In 2020, she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER



Match the words in the box to their meanings:

donate - participate - support - volunteer

- I to do things that help a particular person or group:
- 2 to take part in something:
- 3 to do a job or activity and not take any money for it.
- 4 to give something away to help a person or organization:

0

Put words in order to make sentences:

- Lama / put / painted / to / a picture / the exhibition. / in
- 2 lemonade / to / the market. / in / They / sell / make
- 3 by bus / her cousins. / see / Farah / to / traveled
- 4 some candy / bought / the movie. / to / We / during / eat



Use the adjectives in the box to make adverbs:

angry - bad - good - fast - quiet

- 1 Younis hates playing tennis. He plays
- 2 Dalia came first in the running race. She runs really
- 3 Sherif opened the door because his little brother was sleeping.
- 4 Maged's picture of a horse is excellent. He draws very
- 5 I heard two people shouting in the street today.







Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



- from the river. 1 Omar volunteers to help clean (a. fish - b. ships - c. trash - d. boats)
- 2 Lara helps out in the class.

(a kindergarten – b university – c. English – d. reading)

3 Al and his parents lots of toys and paintings. (a supported - b. volunteered - c. donated - d. participated)

4 Youssef and his friends started a garden. (a. tree - b. flower - c. fruit - d. vegetable)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- . They spend time with people in a friendly way. They like to

 - a) socialize b) confidence
- c) donate
- d) support
- 2 To "" means to take part in something.
 - a) respect
- b) participate
- c) volunteer
- d) organize
- 3 We used the nature camera to how many animals and birds we see.
 - a) protect
- b) install
- c) record
- d) carry
- 4 You press a to make something happen.
 - a) stick
- b) button
- c) handle
- d) mask



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



teenagers - charity - socialize - skills - support

Volunteering is very important and helpful to the community and to the people who volunteer. Volunteering can help (1) . They learn many important (2) when they volunteer. Volunteering can teach them to (3). and make friends. Volunteering can give them confidence. When they volunteer to collect money for a (4), this helps the community Volunteering is fun and teenagers can enjoy it.



Read the text and then answer the questions:

5

a) in unteer

To be a good citizen and helpful in your community, you should be pot to and kind to your neighbors and everyone in your community. You should help oid people. You can do their shopping or do jobs for them at homes. You should a silkeep your environment clean. You can volunteer to clean up beaches, rivers, and parks. You can reduce waste. This also he ps the environment. Don't use plastic bags or plastic hottles. You can recycle them Let's all be good citizens and make the world a better place.

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about how to be a
 - a) community workerb) good citizen (;) fundra ser
- 2 You should be and kind to your neighbors
 - a) bad b) annoying c) polite d) boring
- 3 You should helppeople.
 a) important b) young c) old d) strong

Answer the following questions:

- 4 What can a person do to help the environment?
- 5 What can you do with plastic bags and bottles?



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 local Volunteer event a charity at.
- 2 a ch ldren Fareeda Hassan for charity runs.
- 3 was the village man He the richest in.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 He waited (patient) for the train to leave.
- 2 We use the controller to (p ays) a computer game

Punctuate the following:

fareeda Hassan was born in alexandria in 1994.

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Helping your community"

volunteer - dongte









Read and complete the dialog:

"	ne	ad and com	piete the dialog	y:			
		q	row – communit	ı – volunteer –	Why -	vegetables	
	Mo		do y		_		
		ar : I want t					
			are you going to	o volunteer?			
			ning to		e vegeto	ble garden.	
		the state of the s	re you going to		_		
	On		ing to grow			0	
3			e the odd one o				
		donating	better	participatino	fun	draising	
		M	went	had		~	
	6	bought			1	pect	44 55200405224
	3	happy	good	angrily	bac	1	
	4	joined	grew	cleaned	dec	ided	
	5	volunteer	fundraiser	worker	am	azıng	
)	CI	noose the co	orrect answer f	rom a, b, c, o	rd:		
	1	I like to	I dor	n't take moneu	for hel	ping.	
			donate				ate
	2		oj	and the same of th			
	-	a) for		c) to		d) by	
	5		b) chop	ny tiim. c) watcl		d) fich	
	4	a) ciean	are you using		1	d) fish	
	ľ	What	b) Which	c) Who		d) Why	
	5	41		money for a		, J	
		a) Socializir	ng b) Fundraisi	ing c) Dono	iting	d) Volunt	eering
	6		camera			n .c	
	7		b) and ots of money. T			d) for	
			b) poor			d) annoyi	na
	8	A	does this b	utton do?	This turn	as on the cor	nputer
			b) What				
	9	41	" is to take po	art in somethir	ıg.		
			te b) Donate	c) Volui	nteer	d) Suppor	†
	10		ne drums	440+ 48		1- 4	11
		a) angry	b) kind	c) quick		d) beautif	ully

APRIL MONTHLY TEST



d) careful



			_				
1	📣 Listen	and circle	the cor	rect ansi	wer from	a. b. c	c or da
-	-					-, -,	

- 1 Fareeda Hassan was born in ...in 1994. (a. Cairo – b. Alexandria – c. Luxor – d. Aswan)
- 2 She started in 2006.
 - (a kindergarten b primary school c preparatory school a university)
- 3 In , she organized derivering food boxes to the community (a 2006-b 2008-c 2010-d 2020)
- 4 Today, she runs a _____ for children.

 (a. school b. charity c. hospital d. club)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- When you collect money for charity, it's called
 - economy to fundraising sharing socializing
- 2 A helps you move your character in a video game.
 - a) home
 - a) button b) screen c) joystick d) tablet
- 3 The story was It's true and it happened in the past.
- 4 When something is perfect or excellent, it's

a) sensible

b) real

Sustainable b. simple respectful adeal

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Community - support - activity - volunteered - garden

c) similar

Tumer is a student at "Young Pharaons Primary School". The school started a projecticalled "(1)—Help". The students had to choose something they could do to (2)—other people. Some students planted a vegetable (3)—r the school Other students. (4)—to help clean the trush from the river. Many children participated in the project. They loved joining in and helping the community.



Read the text and then answer the questions:

Eaupt is an imazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums first e can so snorkeling, go on a desert safari, or climb mointains in the Red Sea However, eco-tour sm is becoming more and more popular in Egypt It's more sustainable than traditional tourism. In simeans it's designed to protect nature and help reclude position. In econour sm. people can go bird watching, niking and enough with activities. What makes eco-tourism special is that tourists and it stay it stiple accommed it on and trave, in ways that don't cause pollution,

Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The m	ain	idea	of	the	text	is
---------	-----	------	----	-----	------	----

accommodation to wild fe d) eco-tour sm

2 People can go snorkeling in

b) The Red Seac) N e River d) Luxor

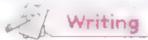
3 Eco-tourism helps reduce

a) money b) pollution c) bird watching d) niking

Answer the following questions:

4 What does being sustainable mean?

5 What is special about eco-tourism?



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 scare - You - mustn't - and - birds - animals.

2 l'm - eat - snack - If - a - hungry, - Pll.

3 gloves - wear - does - she - Why - her?

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 She is wearing a helmet to (protecting) her head.

2 If you practice hard, you (winning)

Punctuate the following:

- dal da vol inteers it a day center for o d people

Write a blog post of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Protecting animal habitats"

(At at in animal speed to live? - How can you protect animal habitats?)

















Retold by Jenny Farmer

Illustrated by Matt Ward





Main Vocahulary



t sten point and say



amethyst



carpenter





-

000



استعع أربير ومن

1...



order



pigeon



yard



grain



feet,



wooden box



papyrus



message



scribe



dovecotes

Extra Vocabulary

Nile Delta	LESII	huge (adj.)	ضحر	nearby (odv.)	9174
fili (v.)	يملأ	bowl	وعاء	thousands	لأاذه
light gray	رمادي فاتح	shiny (adj.)	क्षित्र/स्वर्धि	chest	200
call (v.)	يبادي على	throw (v.)	بلقى	hungrily (adv.)	2034
suddenly (adv.)	وجأة	notice (v.)	يلاحظ	heak	0.0
dark gray	رمادي غامق	stripes	خماوط	follow (v.)	pou
hurt (adv.)/(v.)	مُصاب/ يُصاب	object	شيء	a piece of	∞ ಕೊಟ9
inside (adv.)/(adj.)	داخل/ بالداخل	attach (v.)	بُلدق ب	trip	^ 및d ≽.
holes	فتحاث	special (adj.)	Nalá	large (adj.)	کبر و م
customer	عميل/ زيون	soon (adv.)	قريبًا	exactly (adv.)	4 1214
cute (adj.)	نطيف (جداب)	softly (adv.)	يرقة/ يتعومة	letter	رساله حد
care (day)	(distance) contract	awing taday	7, 7, 7, 7, 7, 7, 7, 7, 7, 7, 7, 7, 7, 7	101101	

Expressions and Phrases

-
once upon a time
(someone) called
one day
coming down
got to the fields
come in
pick up
quiet sound
carrier pigeon
Three days later
capital city
The last day
Come with me then
It's time to go
Good idea!

, attial	
along, long time ago	في فديد الرمدي
looked up	بخب
come out	טיבעיק
couldn't believe his eyes ादः	لا يستطيع تصديق عينيه (تعبير للده
fly away	يطير بعثد
What's wrong?	م المشكلة ؟
poor	مسكين (تعبير لشحص أصابه مكروه)
That's very clever!	هذه طريقة ذكية جدًّا:
It was very important for	إنه مهمر جدًّا من أجل
For the next week	من أجل الأسبوع القادم
much better	أحس بكثير
At one side	على حانب واحد
on the boat	على متن قارب
oh wow!	أووه وا.او ! (تعبير للقرحة)



Story Elements



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:



15-1-111



Nedjem



الشخصيات

The father



The mother



Mr Akhon (The merchant)



Nedjem's cat



Amethyst





Aremu's house مرر أنمو



fields of the village معور القراء



Atemu's house yard فناه منزل أتنحو



on a boat in the بي مثل فاراء في أحال



Mr Akhon's house متزل السند أجور



Amethysi's old



The Beginning

Atemu found a huge flock

of birds in the fields of the

village. He noticed a different

bird among the other birds.

Its wing was hurt. There was

وهد أليمنو سريًا شخة المن إيدا ورافي حماية

المردما لاحطوه ومطائر مجالف بالاطارم

الإصرى كان جناحية مصائبا كاراء

على ساقه

something on its leq

The Middle



Atemu and his father found a wooden box tied to the bird's leg. There was a message inside. They knew it was a carrier pigeon. They knew the message was for a merchant in the city. They wanted to take the bird and the message

وجيد أتنمنو ووالندة صنتوقًا خشبئًا مربوطًا في ساؤر الطائر كاردبود درسالة بالأحلها كاردوغ مين الجميام الراحيل، عرفيوا أن الرساية تخيص تأخيرًا في المديدية، أوادوا أن يعيد دوا الطائر والوسالة إلى الناجير،

back to him.



The End

The merchant met Atemu and his father. He thanked them and showed them Amethyst's house. Atemu was sad to leave the bird. The merchant let Amethyst stay with Atemu. Atemu was happy

قابال الثامار أبيم واووالسمات كرهم الثامير وأمدهم ليبروا منبزل الطائس أمائيست كان أتبميو حريأ ولأزنه سيتوك الطائر وسمح التاجير بية له أمانيست عديد أنيم و. كان أشمو سعيده.

Mora!

When somebody helps you, you should help them if you can.







استمع مرا وتبادل الأجوار



Once upon a time a ong, long time ago, a boy culted Atemu livea it to be beita fits home was in a small village, and he lived with his parents and it is to a sister. Nedgen Atemu was twelve, but he didn't go to school mis father worked as a curpenter life was teaching Atemu how to make things from wood.

Atemu loved an mais, especially birds. He isked to watch the birds that came into his yard. Every day, Atemu gave some grain to the birds the engled watching them eut often, as ster's cat came into the yard and watched the cirds, too It so let mes jumped at the birds, but it never caught them. It was a very slow cat.

ے اللہ عدائیس آپمی عائش بالقرب میں کا اللیل میں بہاؤر فرز فرد قابسہ رہ ودیک نے فروالے ہوا۔ مینوسہ عمر وزیدہ نے رک علی وُف م آڈم و رہا تہ بہاج آئٹ رام میں بہ ریز نے قدید میں از آئے مو تحظی البد ور تحصن انہ بہد کارپوم کار در از میکا املا میں وہ وہ و آخیاً انتقال عمر الشکیلور وائس نے اسٹیلورڈ آئرالیمیدالا بہت کہ گا تا گیا۔



One day in October, Atemu was in the yard when he heard a strange noise. He looked up and saw something amazing. A huge flock of birds were flying over his village. They were coming down to a field nearby.

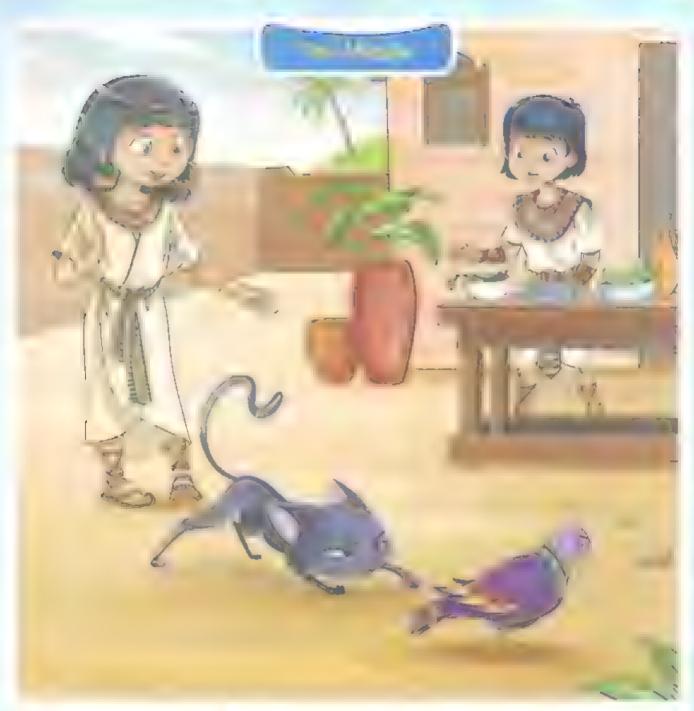
'Mom! Mom!' shouted Atemu "There are so many biras! Can I go and see them?" His Mom came out of the house and looked "Wow!" she said "Yes, you can go" She filled a bow with grain "Here, you are," she said kindly. "You can take this for them"



When Atemu got to the fields, he couldn't believe his eyes. There were thousards of birds Every one of them was I ght gray, with shiny green feathers on its neck and purple feathers on its chest. They were beautiful! They called to each other with a long "whoo" sounds. Atemu threw the grain to the birds. They are it hungrily. Then, suddenly, they flew into the sky again. Atemu watched them go.



Then he noticed a bird at his feet. It was looking at him. "Coo, coo, coo, coo," it went. "I don't have any grain for you, bird," said Atemu. "Coo, coo, coo, coo," went the bird. The noise was different from the other birds. It looked different too. First, it was bigger. The other birds had ye low beaks, but this bird's beak was dark gray. This bird also had stripes on its wings. Atemu could see something strange on its leg, too. Just then, Atemu heard his mother calling him. Atemu started walking quickly, but he could hear the bird behind him. It was following him! "Why don't you fly with your friends?" said Atemu, but the bird just cooed.



When Aten a get to his yard, the bird carrie is after him. He watched it while he cleaned vegetables for a niter. There he saw Nedjern's cat. It was watching the bird, too. Suddenly, the cat jumped on the bird. But hie bird didn't fig away. Nedjern ran and picked up the cat. "You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!" she said.

- "What's wrong with that bird? It can't fig," said their mother "Is it hur?"
- 'Maybel" sold Atema "It a don't fig with the other birds." Atema walked to the bird. When he touched its left wing, it have a splet sound "I think its wing is hart," said Atema.
 - و [م) أها عدد من التعادل وروق قام أثيم بمراقب بنيم الاستواد بتنافي عدد ما الدارات والمساكب القطاوة الما الما
- ا وليوري في ب الأمر فمرا منذ كله هندا) طائر "الا تستطيع أن يعين هن هنو أنيب عناه قال أنم و فريد في منظر منفي أ المنظر، عندما تمين حيام له الأيسرة أصنين عبواً ها "



When Atemu's father came home, Atemu showed him the bird "It has a hurt wing, and there is something on its leg" "Poor bird!" said his father "What is that?" He took the object from the bird's leg. It was a very small wooden box. Atemu's father opened it A piece of papyrus paper was inside "It's a message!" said Atemu's father "This bird is a carrier pigeon." "What's a carrier pigeon?" asked Atemu.

جا - مُنيانِ ويوجد شراء ما على ساده الله أن الأنا الا يا عامو عائر



"It's a bird which curries messages," said in a father "Important people in the city keep pigeons. The pigeons to new places. When there is rewarfich that place, they that i the message to the pigeon. It is showed and carries the message. That's why they're called carrier pigeons."

" nat's very clever," so a Ater of "So, what does "his message say?" "I dun't know," said his father. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe."

الأحمار الله في المرابع القولو التركية الحملة مناز سيند يهم أند أ علوه والرابع المرابع المرابع في المرابع المرابع في المرابع المرابع في المرابع المرابع في المرابع المرابع في المرابع المرابع في المرابع المرابع في المرابع المرابع في المرابع في المرابع في المرابع المرابع في ال



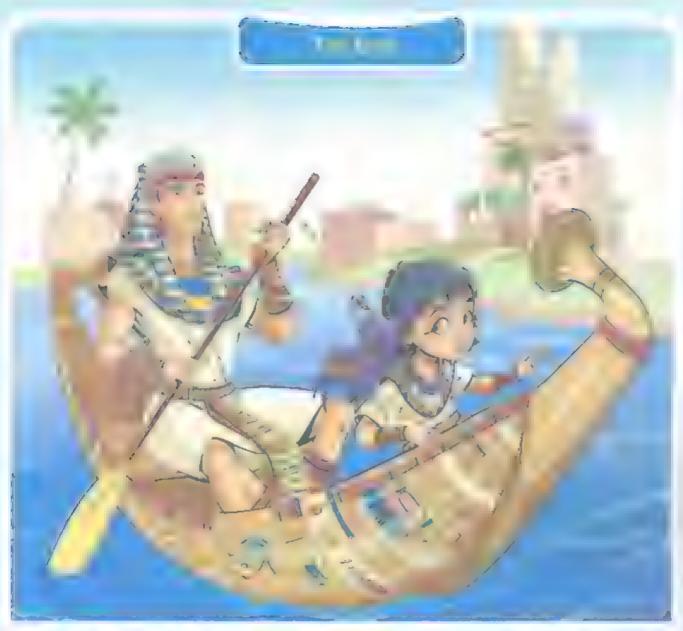
Atems ooked after the pigeon. He made it a high table which the cat couldn't jump onto. He gave it water and grain and talked to it. The pigeon cooled back happing. Atems father went to the city. Three days later he came home.

"Did you speak to the scribe?" said Atemu.

"Yes" said his father "The message was for a jewelry merchant in the city, Mr Akhon I took him the message, and he was very happy! It was an order for a lot of gold jewelry from the capital city. It was very important for him." "Mr Akhon also wants his pigeon. We'll take it to him next week."

"Yes father," Atemu said quietly. For the next week, Atemu looked after the pigeon. The pigeon started to fly again. Every morning, it flew to the roof where Atemu slept and cooled to him. Atemu was very happy to have a new pigeon friend. "I don't want you to go home," he said to it quietly

le dia vlaturus danul



Atemus in a famous excited because it was his first trip to the city. But he was a sad I was a famous have a people to the forgot about that when he saw their uses it the it. I was a famous were very big! Some houses in it domes with many small holes in the yard or on the roof.

"Minute the temporal of the second accordance of the second secon



to meet them. He was wearing a lot of jeweiry. Attemu's father said. A smiting man came to meet them. He was wearing a lot of jeweiry. Attemu knew it was the merchant "Welcome to my home," Mr. Akhon said. "Thank you so much for finding my message. It was from my most important customer. And thanks for looking after my pigeon. Her name is Amethyst — because her feathers are the same color as these purple stones. She is my best bird." "She was hurt" said Atemu. "I see," said the merchant. Can she fly now?" "Yrs," said Atemu. "She's much better." "Come with me then. It I show you where she lives."



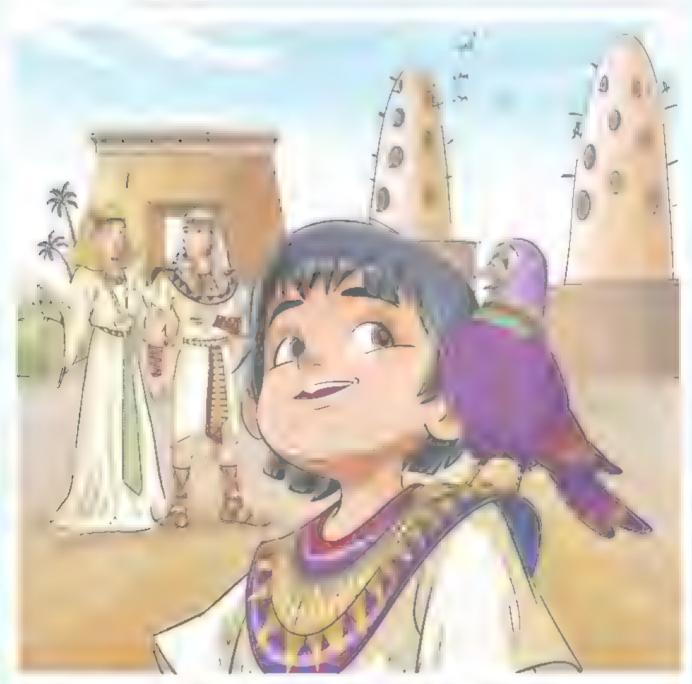
Atemu and his father followed Mr Akhon into his yard. At one side, there were three tail dovecotes "My birds will come home soon" the merchant said. "How many do you have?" said Atemu "Oh, a lot." said Mr Akhon "They have a lot of babies, so I don't know exactly." Atemu looked into a dovecote. He could see some baby birds. "They're so cute!" Atemu said "It's time to go, son," said Atemu's father. "Say goodbye to the bird."

على أحد الحوادب، كان بوجد ثلاثة أبراح حمام طويلة، قال التاجر «ستأثن طيور» إلى مدرلهم قريبًا «ليم أحد الحوادب، كان بوجد ثلاثة أبراح حمام العديد من الصعار، لديث لا أعرف عددهم بالشطء «أسم من الصعار، لديث لا أعرف عددهم بالشطء أنه من صعار الطبور، قال أثيمو «إنهم الطبعة للعانة،» قال والد أتيمو «حان وقت الدهاب يا نمي



"Goodbye Ametnyst," said Atemu, soft y He touched her purple feathers, and she coved. He was very said, but he tried to smile. The merchant was a kind man. He spike to Atemu. "You say Ametnyst got well again, but she didn't y hime?" res" said Atemu. "We , I think she ll be happy to stay with you now."

، ناصدار صحت ، نان أنيم و حريثًا وأتمه حياول أن يشمر ، نان لتأجير رج ألا مزلها ، قال أشمو فنعمر ، ه و التاجر فضئًا ، أعتقد أنها ستنون سعيدة "On wow." said Atemu "Thank you so much" He looked at Amethyst, and she jumped onto his shoulder "She's need a small house," said Mr Akron "I can make one" said Atemu "I'm earning to be a carpenter" "I'me pycu," said his daa



On the boat home, Atemy's father said "Mr Akhon is a very good man. He gave you his best bird!" Atemu said "Yes. How can I thank him?" "You could ask the scribe to write a thank you letter for you," said his father "Good idea" said Atemu." 'And Amethyst can take it to him!"



What did you lear	n about Atem	u and his fami	ily? Write and	answer T	(True)
or F (False):			•		

	Atemu lives in a big town.	()
2	Nedjem is Atemu's older sister.	()
3	Atemu is ten years old.	()
4	Atemu goes to school.	()
5	Atemu's father makes things from wood.	()
6	Atemu has a cat.	()

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Atemu's father was a

- a) teacher b) carpenter c) engineer d) pilot
- 2 Atemu loved animals especially
 - a) cows b) horses c) fish d) birds
- 3 Carrier pigeons carry
 - a) bags b) toys c) messages d) books
- The message was for a merchant in the city.
- a) jewelry b) food c) clothes d) boats

Who says this in the story? Read and write the names:

SE

Atemu - Atemu's father - Atemu's mother - Nedjem

"I think its wing is hurt." .

- 2 "You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!"
- 3 "It can't fly."
- 4 "That's very clever!"
- 5 "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe."

Complete the paragraph. Check your answers in the story:

SE

All of the birds were light gray, with green feathers on their in and in feathers on their chests. But one bird was a little different. It was is than the other birds.

They had if beaks but its beak was is.

It also sounded different. The 6 ... the other birds made was a long "whoo", but it went "coo coo". It had 67 on its wings, but they didn't.

Read the text and answer the questions:

Atemu looked after the pigeon He made it a high table which the cat couldn't jump onto. He gave it water and grain and talked to it. The pigeon cooled back happily. Atemu's father went to the city. Three days later he came home.



took n'm the message, and he was very happy! It was an order for a lot of gold jewe ry from the cap tal city. It was very important for him. Mr Akhon also wants his pigeon. They will take it to him next week."

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- i Atemu looked after the
 - a) cat b) cow
- c) piged

d) horse

- 2 The word "merchant" means
 - a) teacher
- b) trader
- c) carpenter
- d) scribe
- 3 Atemu ard his father will take the bird to the merchant next
 - a) week
- b) year
- c) month

d) season

Answer the following questions:

- What was the message about?
- 5 Summarize the text into two sentences.

Read and answer:

1 What was the story ma nly about?

SB

2 Where did Atemu live?







Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

I love going on vacation, but I think eco-tourism is a more sustainable way to travel. We learned about it in geography today and our teacher explained it really well. For example, you mustn't litter on beaches because this can make animals sick I love watching birds and other



animals in their natural habitats. However, people mustn't get too close to the birds, because it can make them frightened. It's important to speak and move quietly when you are near wildlife.

I think people must be careful not to damage the environment when they trove!

حد ده دی و در در ددس آس آن حدادة بیشه هی عربته دستده آکتر ساعر احد طاحی بیشه القدتعمل عمها فی حدارات الله و مدری علی مدیر احداده بحب آداری الله عدارات الل

مد أن الدير يحد أن الدين حواليمين على عليام الي لما الدليلة عليا متعوها

and the second s						
going on	الدهاب ق	vacation	إجازة			
eco-tourism	السياحة البيثية	sustainable (adj.)	مستداه			
geography	الجغرافيا	explain (v.)	يشرح			
litter	قبامة	beaches	الشواطئ			
sick (adj.)	مريض	natural (odj.)	طبيعي			
habitats	مينات طبيعية	get close to	يقترب من			
move quietly	يتحرك يهدوه	wildlife	الحياة البرية			
careful (odj.)	ٔ حلر	damage (v.)	يدمر			
environment	البيثة	travel (v.)	يسافر			

Look and read

And vegetables. The fruit and vegetables are tree or and who pellips in the local area who can't built or an a their own.

هنده هن حديقة مجتمعياء ميث بررع سدور برزنية العالمة و حشر و عار ثم نتش بالموالة والحصر والتاسية أو الراعة بأنفسهم



A d Ma, to help critaren who are in hispitals is to real with them. Notionly is thur for them, but it can act to give, them to feel better.

توحيد طريقة جينية بمساعدة ، وأنف ل الموجوديان في المستشفيات وهي القرامة معهم النبس الأمير ممتعًا بالسابة بهيم فحسب، بل يمكن أن يساعدهم في الماقع على الشعور بالتحسان.



park Every new tree has sponsors. The sponsors are pendie who pay some money to help look after the tree. The more sponsors we have the more trees we can plant. In silvear, we can bill its of trees because we did so we last lear.



At an 40. volunteer at a food bank, you can sert or more for a for people who don't have enough to eat. It's a great way to help others, and volunteering for a charty we to can be good for your well-being, too.

عدمه تتطوع في سك الصعافر، يمكنك قرر أو صبع الطعافر للأشاءات الدين ليس سيهم ما يكمي من الطعام، إنها طريقة بأنحة العساعدة الأخريان، والتطوع في مؤسسة حيرية متار المدد يمكن أن يكون لغيادًا السلامتك أيضًا.



		-11281100			
community garden	حديقة مجتمعية	seeds	بدور	local area	منظفه محبية
hospitals	مستشفيات	actually	ق الواقع	feel better	يشعر يتحسن
project	مشروع	sponsors	رعاة	pay money	يدفع انتقود
do well	يقوم بعمل جيد	volunteer	يتطوع	food bank	بنك الطعمر
sort	يغرز	charity	جمعية حيرية	well-being	سلامة (صحة نفسية)



TAPE SCRIPTS

WINTE P

Practice on Lesson 1

We have many artifacts in Egypt, because of the climate. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. The Ancient Egyptians used certain materials that could last a long time. They used granite to build the pyramids. They also used gold a lot because it's valuable. But it was also durable.

Practice on Lesson 3

One night, the king was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle and helped it until it feit better. To thank the king, the goat made his wish come true. Everything the king louched turned into gold.

Test Yourself on Unit 7

Talia and Tarek were at the Museum of Ancient History last week. Dr. Fayez was their tour guide. He told them that we have many artifacts in Egypt that are made of different materials. The pyramids for example, were built with granite. Pots in Ancient tombs were made of clay that ancient Egyptians found by the river. Other artifacts were made of glass that can last forever.

WINT 8

Practice on Lesson 1

Yaseen had many wonderful toys when he was younger. He toved playing marbles with his brother Sami. He had a small skateboard, that he thought it was really good fun. Yaseen's favorite toy was his action figure. It looked we spider-man. He loved making up lots of games for it. Yaseen and Sami played board games very often, but Sami usually beat Yaseen.

Practice on Lesson 3

Last week Omar was doing a class quiz about the most popular free-time games his classmates prefer to play Nader really loved playing outside. He liked running, climbing, and playing football Reda really enjoyed playing party games like hopscotch and hide and seek. Sama thought playing outside is quite good, but she preferred playing games that use a lot of imagination like playing with her doll's house.

Test Yourself on Unit 8

Fares and Dalia are brother and sister. Last week, they visited their grandma in Luxor. Fares found his old toy box at her house. He was so excited to see all his old toys. Fares loved playing with his old action figures, too! He made up lots of games for them. His sister Dalia had a doll's house. They both played with it

417.4

Practice on Lesson 1

Lama is writing a review of a story. The story is about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The narrator is Goha. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. The characters are the man and his son. The moral is that you can't make people happy

Practice on Lesson 3

My name is Nada. I love reading. Yesterday, I read a story about a boy called Sami. He worked as a shepherd, looking after sheep. Every day, he took the sheep up the hill and rested while the sheep are the delicious grass. Al the villagers were loving him, as he always tells the truth.

Test Yourself on Unit 9

My favorite story is "Goha and the Dankey". The characters are Goha, his son, and the dankey. It took place in the countryside The story is about the man and his son who take turns riding the dankey But people weren't happy with anyone riding the dankey. In the ending, they both carry the dankey!

March Monthly Test

Jane's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful. They loved to go there from time to time to swim and play games on the sand. One day, when Jane was visiting her grandparents, she suggested going to the beach. On the beach, when Jane was swimming, she found a bottle in the water with a message inside it.

Practice on Lesson 1

I'm Salma, I read a book about proverbs, and it was amazing. Proverbs have more than one meaning, for example this proverb "The early bird catches the worm." tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something

Practice on Lesson 3

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here. You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe shorks

Test Yourself on Unit 10

Hi, I'm Salma. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and comp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants.

7 5 1T 11

Practice on Lesson 1

My name is Youssef, I'm in grade six. We started a project at school called Community Help We started a vegetable gorden. There were lots of people from the community who volunteered to help us in the gorden. We grow potatoes, tomatoes, carrots, and peppers. We also grow strawberries, oranges, and apples

Practice on Lesson 2

I always like to volunteer. I volunteer at a day center for old people. I show them how to open jars with a multi-grip. I do a beach clean-up too. I pick up the trash with a grabber and put the trash in black bags It's very easy to use

Test Yourself on Unit 11

Omar volunteers to help clean trash from the river, so that animols' habitats are safer. Lara helps out in the kindergarten class. She reads stories to the younger children. All and his parents donate lots of toys and paintings to the children's hospital Yaussef and his friends started a vegetable garden in their school They grow fresh vegetables

April Monthly Test

Foreeda Hosssan was born in Alexandria in 1994
She started preparatory school in 2006 In 2010, She organized her First charity event delivering food boxes to the community. In 2020, She wan the "2020 community worker oward" Today, She runs a charity for childern



Final Revision and Exams



100 ٪ إطابات

نزل إجابات الكتاب بصيغة PDF





www.aladwaa.com

FOLIOWUE













Part 1 Final Revision

3

- Vocabulary
- Language Focus
- Exercises on Each Unit

Part 2 Final Exams

35

- 11 Final Exams
- 2 Al-Azhar Exams

Part 3 Tape Scripts

61





Unit 7 Amazing artifacts

(Vocabulary)

Museum of Ancient History	متحف التاريخ القديم	artifacts	أثار / شحف فنية
preserve (v)	بعدال	materials durable glass valuable pots grains mummify (v.) wisdom copper- crocodile	مواد مانين/ صلب زياج اون (حال) اون (حال) المكمة
granite	جرانیت حلین/صلصال داهب داهب		
fascinating			
clay			
gold			
good condition			
adore (v.)	يعشق/ يحب بشدة		
statue	المثال قوير، النهر هيار		
hippo			
falcon			
economy	التماد	baboon	قرد الرياح (البابوت)
ibis	طائر أيو منجل	weapons	أسلحة
king	metal all	metal	عدن أدوات ووقر خنجر خنجر المرفيون المراعية
trade (v.)	يتاجر	tools	
iron	حلية	castle save (v.)	
daughter	ابنة		
heaven	الجنة	dagger	
bronze	معدن البرواز	craftsmen	
stone	حجو	fortune	
meteorite	نيك	agricultural	
damage (v.)	يدهو	pharaohs	
precious	غالٍ / لمين	jeweiry	مجوهرات





Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense

We use the post simple tense to express an action that happened and ended in the post at a certain time.

بسجدم زمن الماضي السيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهي في الماضي في وقت معين.

1. Regular Verbs

يتكون الفعل في الماضي بإضافه (pd/d/led):

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (led): talk -> talked الگھال المنتهبة ب(0) يضاف ليا (b): adored → adored الأنعال المنتهية بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن نحلف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها الـ (led). mummified -> mummified الأهنال المنتهية يحول مسبوق بـ (۱۰۵۰۱۰۵ + حول ساكن يضاف لها (۱۵) مع مضاعفة الحوف الساكن. drop -> dropped

. @ Ancient Egyptians loved animals.

2. irregular Verbs أفعال في منتطبة

الأقعال غير المنتظمة لا كتبع قاعدة عند تحويلها للماض البسيط وتحفظ كما هي، على سبيل المثال:

	Present	Past	Present	Past June
	be (am - is - are)	was / were	keep .	kept
	come	come	teach	taught
	become	become	grow	grew
	go	went	have	had
1	do	did		,

Ancient Egyptians kept monkeys and baboons.

Affirmative|Form:

. كملة الجملة + التصريف الثاني للفعل + (الفاعل) Subject

Sama traveled to London last year.

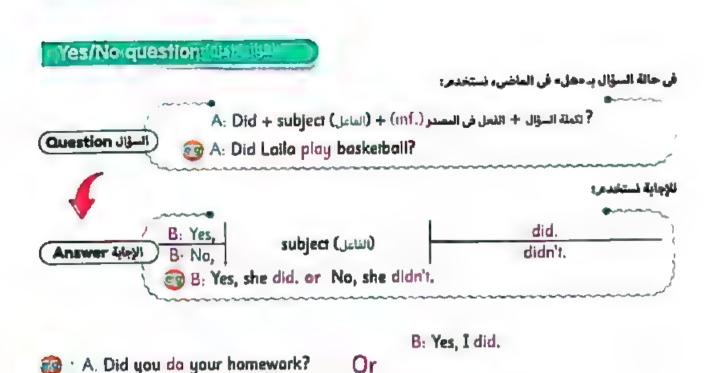
Negative Form

في حالة النفي نستخدم:

. تكملة الجملة +القعل في المصدر (.inf + (inf + للفاعل) Subject

- People in the past didn't have cars.
- @ I didn't go to the beach last summer.





Whi questions and an amount of the little

A: Question word (کلمة الاستعبان + did + subject (الفعل) (inf.) الفعل في المصدر (inf.) + التصريف الثاني للفعل + Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل + A: Where did you go yesterday? B: I went to the club.

B: No, I didn't.

A: What did Talia do last night?

B: She watched TV, then she went to bed.



- Mana went to the zoo yesterday.
- I visited my grandparents last week.
- Hossam and Ali met each other an hour ago.
- ₩e lived in a village in the past.



Verb to "be" in the past simple

Affirmative Form

If Hel Shel III

فأعل مقرد

. تكملة الجملة + ZDW

Wel They/ You/

تكملة الجملة + 919W

Habiba was abroad last week.

- Cats were important pets in Ancient Egypt.

Negative Form

V He She/ It/ فاعل مقرد

was not (wasn't) + الجملة الجملة الجملة الجملة الجملة الجملة الجملة بالجملة بالجملة بالجملة الجملة
We/ They You!

were not (weren'l) + الملة المحلة
- There wasn't a statue in the temple.

- They weren't at school yesterday.

Yes/No question

السؤال :Question

Was Were إ فاعل مفرد /he/ she/ it/ مايد /he/ she/ it/

wel they! you! مد فاعل جمع wel they!

subject (القاعل)

was/were.

Karma: Was Hossam at the museum yesterday?

Amal: No, he wasn't,

: Were there a lot of artifacts in the museum?

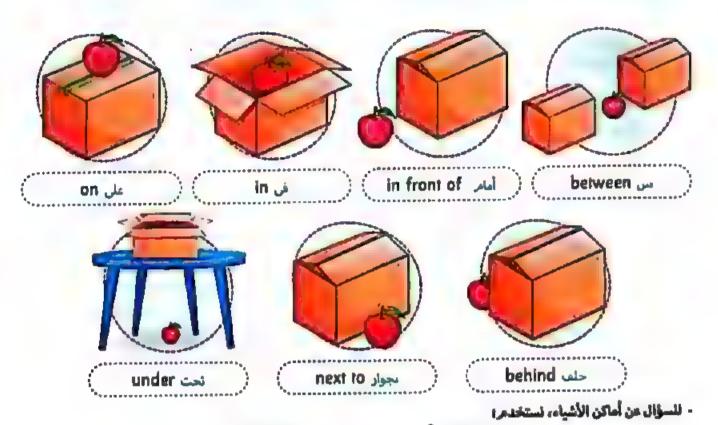
Omar: Yes, there were.



Prepositions of place

We use prepositions of place to say where things are.

ستجدم خروف الجر الحاصة بالمكان للذكر أباكن تواجد الإشياء



Where is the + أسعر الشيء ٢٠ آخر + حرف الجر الخاص بالمكان ٢٢ Irs + المعر شيء آخر



A: Where is the ball?

B: It's under the table.



B: It's next to the TV.



Exercises on Unit 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1	When we were at the m	useum, the	talked about	the ancient history.		
	a) farmer	b) doctor	c) plumber	d) guide		
2	Ancient Egyptians made	e the Pyramids fro	m	SD		
	a) clay	b) granite	c) gold	d) silver		
3	Hot, dry climate helps the artifacts for a long time.					
	a) preserve	b) learn	c) build	d) like		
4	Ais a ver					
	a) granite	_		_		
5	There are many artifacts in the of Ancient History.					
	a) stone	b) Pyramid	c) School	d) Museum		
6	Ancient Egyptians used	to m	ake some pots.			
	a) fire	b) light	c) clay	d) carpet		
7	a) fire b) light c) clay d) carpet We have some important, buildings in Egypt.					
	a) cheap	b) valuable	c) bad	d) easy		
8	The is a so	caru animal.				
	a) cat	b) snake	c) duck	d) camel		
9	Ancient Egyptions cover	red their artifacts i	n, bec	ause it is valuable.		
	a) wood	b) gold	c) plastic	d) wool		
10	People in Ancient Egypt	wore	with the image o	f a scarab to bring		
	them good fortune.					
	a) shoes	b) glasses	c) jewelry	d) ponts		
11	The verb "" means to warp in cloth to preserve for a very long time.					
	a) wear	b) buy	c) mummify	d) damage		
12 Ais an object made of stone or another material to loc						
	a) wisdom	b) grain	c) pet	d) statue		
13	The Ancient Egyptians	used metals to mal	ke tools and	of relative section in .		
	a) weapons					
14	oods are produced					
	and used.					
		b) trade				
15	Ancient Egyptians	made a fa	imous dagger for	Tutankhamun's		
	tomb from meteorite.					
	a) craftsmen	b) farmers	c) plumbers	d) carpenters		

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

	gold - strange - daughter - castle -	sor
--	--------------------------------------	-----

common - craftsmen - copper - meteorites - garden

(6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Ĭ.	I to the beach yesterday.						
	a) go	b) went	~ ~	d) goes			
2	They	. excited to see their g	randfather last n	ight.			
	a) are	b) is	c) am	d) were			
3	The building is	the bank o	and the restaurant	t.			
	a) in	b) under	_	d) between			
4	I scie	ence when I was at th	e university.				
	a) study	b) studied	c) studies	d) studying			
5	Did the Ancient Egyptians						
	a) keep	b) keeping		d) keeps			
6		up in Cairo.					
	a) grew	b) growing	c) grow	d) grows			
7	_	you go yesterday?	1				
-	a) do	b) did	c) does	d) doing			





8	There	a lot of people in th	e party.	
	a) is	b) am	c) was	d) were
9		the table.		to.
10	a) in	b) next	c) between	d) on
10	a) in front	b) between	c) next	d) across
	a) III (1011	U) Delween	Criexi	d) aciozz
(C	Read and write th	e correct form of the	e (word)s betwee	n brackets:
1	Nour (don't)	come from F	rance yesterday.	
2	My father (come).	home tv	vo hours ago.	
3	(Do)	she swim in the sea l	ast summer?	
4	(Are)	the boys sad when t	hey lost the game	e?
5	She (doesn'i)	do her home	work yesterday.	
6	They didn't (bough	ii)a pri	esent last birthda	y .
7	The ball was in fro	ont (to)	the house.	
8	The library is (beh	ind) to	the computer rac	m.
9	We (eat)	at this restauran	i a week ago.	
10	A: (Was)	there books on	the table? B: Yes	, there were.
6				
(E)	Put the words in	the correct order to	make sentences	
1	used — small — iro	n — for — <u>They</u> — iter	ns.	
2	We - excited - lea	ırn — are — to— abou	t — history,	
3	do – many – Why	– we – artifacts – t	nave?	
4	Egyptians - Ancie	nt - pets - The - lov	red — their,	04 64 54 64 11 12 10 04 04 04 04 04 04 04 04 04 04 04 04 04
5	a — weekend — Di	d — have — they — g	ood?	vád 886644 (*4) (4 ()447974444 (*4) huj po +99 (o) y sy podůdí fá
	**************************************	***********************************	- 1 <u>1 1 1 0 0 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 </u>	**************************************
0				



Unit 8 Toys and games

Vocabulary

action figure	مجسم على شكل شخصية	make up (v.)	يؤلف/ يغترع
troin set	لعبة التعثار	dall's house	مئزل دمية
rollerblades	عجلات تزاج	have a go on	46N
skateboard	لن الولج	board gomes	أتعاب لوحية
beat (v.)		marbles	گرات الرحام
cuddly toy	همهٔ عناق	hide and seek	الغيشة
hopscotch	لعبة العربعات	skipping	تط الحيل
chalk	طيكي	stall	Sias
toys	العاب	helmet	400
knee pads	وفي الركبة	video games	أثماب القيديو
button	۵	trunk	خرطوم الفيل
sail (v.)		console	أوحة التحكم
city	4	bricks	طوب (مكعبات البناء)
adventure gomes	ألعاب مقامرة	Important	هادر
creative	64*	fun	معتج/ شيق
different	منتلف	idea	fæ
difficult	(a) mg (but manufacture and ma	broject	مشروع
design	تصير	favorite	مفضل
interesting		younger	أمغر





Language Focus

Intensifiers

We use intensifiers to give a stronger meaning to adjectives and verbs.

يستجدم حميروات الصمئت والأممالية لإعطاء درجة من القوة للصمة والمحيء

really, so, very

They're used to give a stronger meaning to the adjective or the verb.

يُسخِدِم لجعل الصمة أو المعل أقوى.

لاحط أن "so/very" تأتي قبل الصمات ولكن "really" تأتي قبل الصفات أو الأفعال.

منة adjective بمنزز Intensifier

المل verb (معرز Intensifier

really + verb 🛶 💛 🚳 I really liked playing hopscotch.

معزز adjective معزز

rery الله — 🕳 🚳 Sarah wasn't very good at skipping.

,

intensifier 1100

adjective عسفة

so 👆 —→ 🧐 Some skipping games are so difficult.

إلى حد ما و quite

It's used to make the adjective less strong. (It comes before the adjective).

يستخدم لجعل الصفة أقل قوة [وتأتي قبل الصمة].

معزز Intensifier

adjective 31-

quite الرحد ا I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.



0

8

th

di gi

ne

at all: Substitute

It's used to strengthen the negative sentences.

ستحدم لجعن العملة المشية أهوى

فعل verb

intensifier 1500

at all على الإمتلاق ——— 🚳 He didn't like skipping at al...

"Gerund" Verbs followed by (verb + ing) (ing + المعال متبوعة (بفعل)

stort	 e 9	Hana started reading stories a year ago.
continue	 ê g	Moaz continued skipping for a while.
finish	 e.g	They finished painting their room yesterday.
stop	 E	I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago.
like	 eig	They like playing with a train set.
love	 eg	Nour loves making up new games.
enjoy	 e g	I enjoy watching TV at night.
prefer	 etg	I prefer drinking coffee to tea.
dislike	 eg	We dist ke playing with old toys.
hate	 E 9	Nader and Omar hate playing hide and seek.
Imagine	 29	They imag ned flying a plane.



Exercises on Unit 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

I	Spiderman was my favorite					
	a) food	b) action figure	c) place	d) color		
2	Playing	like chess is really	fun.			
	a) board games	b) matches	c) trains	d) hide and seek		
3	He marked the floor w	ith chalk to play	Sidentificance consists thereon p			
	a) hide and seek			d) basket ball		
4	My brother played with	h e	it was his favorite	toy.		
	a) chair	b) book	c) train set	d) glass		
5	I am good at playing n					
	a) miss		c) have	d) look		
6	To " is !	to try something.				
	a) hide	b) beat	c) have a go on			
7	You can wear	to protect yo	our knee while ska	teboording.		
	a) a helmet			d) rollerblades		
8	The is th	ne long nose of the	elephant.			
	a) market			d) stoll		
9	I liked to play	Nobody co	in find me.			
	a) handboll	b) tennis	c) hopscotch	d) hide and seek		
10	A " is w	hat you touch to m	nake a machine wo	ork.		
	a) sail	b) button	c) stall	d) trunk		
11	A "" is a	strong piece of clo	th that makes a bo	oat move.		
	a) game			d) toy		
12	A " " is a		u use to sell things	from the market,		
	a) stall		c) button			
13	The rules of the	are simple	. We can play it e	asily.		
	a) bottle	b) game	c) garden	d) helmet		
14	She is very	_	omes up with new	ideas.		
		•	c) creative	d) bad		
15	The test was so			full mark.		
	a) easy	b) difficult	c) cheap	d) simple		

Read and complete the text with words in the box:

creative - bad - cities - board - bricks

We always enjoy playing games outside with our friends, and at school we play hopscotch and (1) games. For me, playing video games is really exciting. It is fun. My favorite games are ones where you build (2). I've made a really big city using different (3). It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be (4) and make something new.

doil's house — make — have a go — action figure — rollerblades

I visited my grandfather last week. I found a box of my old toys at his house.

There was an (1) . I loved playing with it. My sister had a big

(2) . It looked like a real house. We both played with it. I found

my old (3) . I wanted to (4) on them, but they were
too small. When I was younger, my friends had rollerblades, too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Ī	I	liked playing tennis wh	en I was young.	
	a) really	b) much	c) enough	d) very
2	We didn't enjoy	the match	It was boring.	
	a) really	b) very	c) so	d) at all
3	They are	good at hiding	. No one can find	l them.
	a) few	b) very	c) at all	d) quite
4	The film wasn't	funny.		
	a) verų	b) really	c) at all	d) so
5		tired after playing	football for two h	ours.
_	a) so	b) at all	c) few	d) some
6		d to her	friend.	
Ī	a) talking	b) talks	c) talked	d) talk
7		English movies.		
•	a) watch	b) watching	c) watched	d) watches





8	She prefers	hide and seel	c to hopscotch.			
	a) plays	b) played	c) playing	d) play		
9	Eman imagined	to Italy.		_		
	a) travel	b) travels	c) traveled	d) traveling		
10	I enjoyed	science when I $_{ m I}$	was young.			
	a) studying	b) study	c) studies	d) studied		
Œ	Read and write the co	errect form of the	(word)s between	brackets:		
1	Same math problems a	ire (at all)	difficult,			
2	We (very)	enjoyed our tri	p last holiday.			
3	My brother speaks Eng	lish (quite)	well. He s	peaks like Americans		
4	The pizza was (at all)	deli	cious. I couldn't s	top eating.		
5	The weather isn't (so).	hot	so we can go out	t.		
6	My brother stopped (le	D	ne share his toy.			
7	They enjoy (eat)	their lunc	th together.			
8	She prefers (draws) pictures.					
9	Sara finished (bake)	her b	pirthday cake.			
10	She loves (plays)	board g	ames.			
(5	Put the words in the c	orrect order to m	ake sentences:			
-	friends — I — with — pla					
2	you — weekend — on the — grandma — visit — <u>Did</u> — your?					
3	could — a very — time — hide — I — time — long — for.					
4	Eslam — quite — footbal	l – was – good –	at.			
5	enjoyed — her — really -	- riding - She - b	ike.			
A	441000-1-144004000000000000000000000000	destablic channessesses, unit mysumpaye.		WEDDONEDLE P. MEPPS NAMED OF SERVICE OF SERVICE OF		





Vocabulary

setting	أليكان (الكيمة)	characters	شخميات
ending	النهاية	narrator	الراوى
moral	العرزة (الدوس الأعادق)	funny	مضجاك
countryside	الريف	journey	
story	the second spin spin-spin spin-spin spin spin spin spin spin spin spin	sand	رمال
bottle	44)	trash	فالما
message	Ji-g	shepherd	الراعى
shine (v.)	ياحع	scared	خائف
sheep	خروف	boat	الزيب
villager	SUP.	wolf	ئلب
coast	ساحل	market	d-
forest	44	review	وإجنة
quiet		son	Ŏŧ
take turn	وأفذ منحني	tired	جهد/ شعب
spoce	الفضاء	path	
popular	مشهور	differences	فعلالات
details	تغلميل	have a turn	نبه دور
last part of	الجزء الأدير من	take place	طث
surf	يركب الأمواج		







The Past Continuous Tense

We use the past continuous tense in stories to say what was happening at

a particular time in the past.

ستخدم المأصى المستمر في المصدل لتقول ما كان يحدث في وقت معين في الماضي.

Affiliametive Form



- 1 Yesterday afternoon, John was walking his dag.
- 2 Old and I were playing computer games yesterday morning.

Negative Form

- eļg
- 1 Amira wasn't reading yesterday evening.
- 2 They weren't sleeping at 8 yesterday.

Yes/No Question المكاليك

السرائد Was I/ he/ she/ it/ السرائد

Were we/ they/ you/ السرائد

Was Ali studying for his exams last night?

(inf. مصدر الفعل + ing)

Answer: Հերի

Yes,	11	
No,	(الفاعل) subject	

was/were.

No, he wasn't.



A: Was she writing in her book?

eg Yes, he was.

- B: Yes, she was.
- 2 A: Were the children playing football yesterday evening?

OR

B: No, they weren't,

Whi question Wh-word was + (inf. مصدر النحل + inq).......? subject (العاعل) كلمة الاستفهام were [A: What was she doing at 6 am yesterday? B: She was having breakfast. 2 A: What were you doing yesterday evening? B: I was studying. ikes Words I all (day/ morning/ evening/ night) yesterday 2 at (6, 7, 8, ... o'clock/ am/ pm) yesterday Past continuous with (when): We can also use the past continuous with (when) and the past simple to show when one action interrupted another in the post. يحكننا أيضًا استخدام العاص المستمر مع (when) وانماض البسيط لإظهار مثى يقاطع حدث ما حدثًا آخر في الماض، Past simple Post continuous الماضي البسيط ألعاطس العستعر حدث کان مستمراً 🤇 The children were playing in the park when mom called them out.





Exercises on Unit 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

t	My grandfather told us	s a funny	last night.	
	a) toy	b) game	c) food	d) story
2	The last part of a story	is the	·	-
	a) moral	b) setting	c) beginning	d) ending
3	My birthday is alon	that h	appens every year	
	a) beginning	b) message	c) event	d) ending
4	Goha is the best	in the stor	ry.	
	a) animal	b) bird	c) character	d) woman
5	The beg	ins his story by tel	ling everyone the r	nystery.
	a) carpenter	b) narrator	c) plumber	d) nurse
6	The of t	he story is you car	't make everyone	happy.
	a) moral		_	
7	I am thirsty. I want a	of w	ater.	
	a) piece	b) slice	c) bottle	d) loaf
8	This is your poper and	you can write you	ır ho	ere.
	a) message	b) plastic	c) video	d) board
9	I was a bit	when I saw the	lion at the zoo. It m	ade me frightened.
	a) scared	b) easy	c) hungry	d) lozy
10	The boy	waited for his she	ep to drink.	
	a) doctor	b) shepherd	c) teacher	d) scientist
11	A " is so	omeone who lives i	in a village.	
	a) foreigner		c) tourist	d) visitor
12	The is a	scory animal.		
		b) wolf	c) bird	d) fish
13	She loved sailing her	ardore-i-prepaga-i-prepadani dinamana B		
	a) car	b) taxi	c) boat	d) bus
14	He is so	, he always make	s me laugh.	
	a) boring	b) funny	c) bored	d) busy
15	The sun was	when we wer	e at the park yeste	rday.
	a) playing	b) shining	c) eating	d) watching

** *

Read and complete the text with words in the box:



coast - message - desert - market - sail

I live in Hurghada. It is an amazing place. There are loss to do and see here. with my mother to buy our food. I enjoy living I usually go to the (1)my boat. and I always here as I live on the (2)Last week, I saw something in the water. I found a in a bottle. I (4) read it happily because it was for me.

moral - review - characters - funny - big

My name is Hadeer. I like reading stories and I am writing a . of (1) Goha's stories. I love the details he gives about the , the setting, that Goha wants and everything that happens. Every story has a (3) and clever. People around to teach us. And his stories are both (4) the world always read about his stories.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

ī	T was walking cown in	Itle 21test Milett T "		PIGE TITLETTON
	a) meeting		c) meets	d) meet
2	She stud	lying English yeste	rday afternoon.	
	a) was	b) is	c) are	d) were
3	They were	fast in the race	yesterday evening	•
	a) run		c) runs	d) ran
4	Whatyo	ou doing when you	ir cousin came hor	ne?
	a) did	b) was	c) are	d) were
5	Ahmed and Eslam	their br	eakfast at 7 am ye	esterday.
	a) was having	b) had	c) were having	d) has
6	A: Was she sleeping at	4 pm yesterday?	B: No, she	pannes bes defined-00000 P
	a) were	b) was	c) weren't	d) wasn't
7	I was drawing a picture	e when the light	out.	
	a) going	b) go	c) went	d) goes
8	I footba	ll when I hurt my l	egs.	
	a) playing	b) play	c) was playing	d) were playing

mu ald friend

9	What were they	from sev	en to eight o'cl	ock yesterday?
	a) do	b) doing	c) did	d) does
10	Eslam 1		_	D (t-tia
	a) listened	b) was listening		d) were listening
(C)	Read and write the co	orrect form of the	(word)s betwe	en brackets:
1	They (was)	drinking cola	when I met the	em at the club.
2	She (is)	playing board ga	mes at 7 o'cloc	k yesterday.
3	What were you (read)	417-791007Epropoliti 201404744-1-1-1-1414 W	nen I called you	1?
4	A: Were you doing yo	our homework yes	terday evening	?
	B: No, I (weren't)	Advidances over 19 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11		
5,	They were taking pho	tos when Adel (wo	os coming)	
6	When she (gets)	an email	, she was textir	ng her friend.
7	Sara was (make)	a video	call with her a	unt yesterday evening.
8	I (traveling)	to Alexandria	when it rained	1.
9	She (cleaned)	her room a	t 7 pm yesterde	ay.
10	They (aren't)	swimming in	n the sea yester	day morning.
(E	Put the words in the	correct order to n	nake sentences	6
1	stories – popular – ov	er — the world — H	lis — are — all.	Adam and Ada
2	write - bottle - in - Lo	ei's — a — a messa	ge.	ýná z á pákýnnussákáká z prí pakiskynspystyn snádřídákát z prí prí p
3	beach — beautiful — qu	uiet — The — and —	was.	
4	enjoyed — about — fav	orlte — her — She	– things – read	ing.
5	boat - really - I - lov	e – sailing – my.		
22	#19209==4001 110409=0000 1 141545444 (; =4000)	, 1+419998410124449888810>90>00904194	11011090000000101000001111 1 + 1044	198468899419419

Unit 10 Free as a bird

Vocabulary

proverbs	أمنال	early bird	الطور المبكر
warm	دودة	successful	Set
feather	فلت	flock	سربه قطيع
together	الله	similor	مشابه
careful	e de la composition della comp	count (v)	- Ang
hatch (v.)	يفقس	nest	عش
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	real	حقيقن
sensible	مطل	dare (v.)	berte
damage (v.)	يثمر	historical	تاريخي
safari	سفاري	mountains	جبال
pollution	التلوث	environment	البيثة
sustainable	<u>س</u> ثعر	simple accommodation	سكن بسيط
oasis	الواحة	migrate (v.)	aples.
distance	44	species	أتواع / فصائل
respect (v.)	Aire	habitat	محكن / بيثة طبيعية
protect (v.)	يمس	ideal	مثال
sunset	غروب الشمس	kingfisher	طائر الراواف
hiking	التنه	flamingo	طلتر النحام
tent	- fage	crocodiles	تعاسيج
tour	جولة سياحية	comp	معسكر
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	different	متبوع/ مارتك
underwater	تحت الماه	vacation	tile)
planet	كوكب	swift	طائر السمامة
lizards	سحالي	safe	آمن
orea	dilete	scuba dive (v.)	· Page
go sightseeing "	يشاهد المعالم السياحية	local communities	العجتمعات المحلية
eco-friendly	صديق للبيثة	migration	الهجرة
3		1 5	





must/mustn't

We use "must" when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do.

نسخدم "must" عبد التحدث عن شيء تحيد عليا فعله أو مهير فعله.

. تكملة الجملة + الفعل في المصدر (.must + (inf + الفاعل) + Tublect (...

We must bring a tent.

بجين عصا أفيين فيبيد

We use "mustn't (must not)" when we are not allowed to do something.

ستحدم "mustn't (must not)" عندما يكون غير مسموح لنا بفعل شيء ما.

. تكملة الجملة + الفعل في المصدر (.inf + (inf + الفاعل) + Subject

We mustn't swim here because there might be crocodiles!

الايجب أن نسبح هنا لأن من التحسل وجود تماسيم!

The Present Simple Tense

أنكملة الجملة + الفعل في المصدر (inf.) + اسم جمع We/ They/ You/

I go to school on foot.

Affirmative Form: ميطة الإثبات

اسم مقود He/ She/ It/ اسم مقود + (inf. + 5, es, ies) + المراد الجملة + (inf. + 5, es, ies)

Doma visits her grandparents every Friday.

She watches TV in the evening.

Omar studies his lessons in the afternoon.

. تثملة الجملة + الفعل في المصدر (.hf.) + don't + (inf بسم جمع /You في المصدر (.hf

We don't have eggs for breakfast.

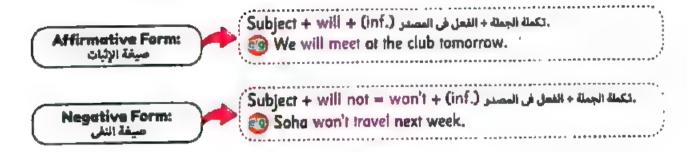
Negative Form: صيفة النفي

. لكملة الجملة + الفعل في المصدر (.inf + doesn't + (inf + اسم مفرد + He/ She/ It

Ali doesn't play basketball.

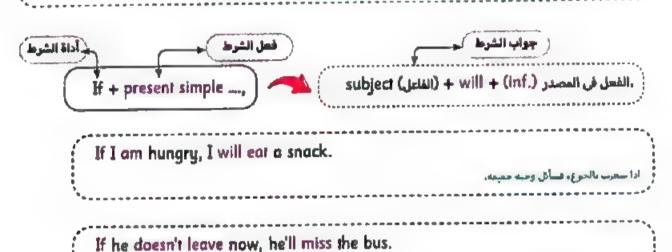


The Future Simple Tense



If (First conditional)

We use "If (First Conditional)" to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.
- الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحقيث عن الأشياء التي من المحتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.





Exercises on Unit 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1	My mother always say:	s the early	gets the we	orm.
	a) baby	b) bird	c) horse	d) camel
2	You should study hard	to be	in your life.	
	a) true	b) successful	c) lazy	d) exact
3	"Birds of a feather	togethe	r" means that simile	ar people like doing
	the same things.		•	
	a) block	b) study	c) flock	d) go
4	There is no difference l	between the two bo	oys. They look ver	y
	a) similar	b) difficult	c) hard	d) bad
5	When something is	it hap	pens and is true.	
	a) fake	b) careful	c) higher	d) real
6	"Bisaw	ay of traveling the	it doesn't damage	the environment.
	a) Eco-tourism	b) Tourist	c) Distance	d) Pollution
7	" means	a good idea that	someone has thou	ght about carefully.
	a) Strange	b) Successful	c) Sensible	d) Similar
8	The word "	" means having	what you need, a	nd nothing more.
	a) sustainable	b) simple	c) ideal	d) local
9	The 4 is	somewhere to sta	y.	
	a) bank	b) post office	c) accommodation	nd) market
10	Last week, we went to	a camp in the desi	ert and stayed in a	\$44: 5-41 4511514416055P(0049094197111 1
	a) sea	b) farm	c) garden	d) tent
11	We can	, a lot of trees at	nd flowers to mak	ce our environment
	clean.		. [
	a) domage	b) plant	c) eat	d) destroy
12.	To "" me	ans to like someth	ning and want to la	ok after it.
	a) snorkel	_		d) camp
13	The panda's natural	Is the	bamboo forest.	
	a) hobitat		c) camp	
14	A " is a well	-known phrase ab	out something whi	ch is generally true.
	a) description	b) proverb	c) plan	d) meaning
15	I love to go swimming	and bird	in warm we	ather,
	a) snorkeling	b) watching	c) sleeping	d) comping
6				

Read and complete the text with words in the box:



terrible - protected - scuba dive - respect - coral reefs

Last week, I read about The Ras Mohammed National Park. It is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. People came from all over the world to snorkel and _______(1)_______. You can see ________(2)_____ and lots of colored fish in the sea. The National Park is _______(3)______ because it is so beautiful. People who visit this amazing place must _______(4) ______ nature.

vocations — nests — migrate — species — animal

(C) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

t. We all must

9	ALC WILLIAMS PROPERTY.	100 to 1 1 100 to 1 1		
	a) respecting	b) respected	c) respect	d) respects
2	You	throw trash on the f	loor.	
	a) must	b) should	c) musin't	d) can
3	You mustn't	birds or anim	nals because they	can hurt you.
	a) scare		c) scared	d) scares
4	You	, tidy your bedroom.		
		b) mustn't	c) shouldn't	d) couldn't
5	You mustn't	the music so	loud.	
	a) turns		c) turned	d) turning
6	If you read more of	bout the environmen	t, you	it.
	a) would protect	b) will protect	c) protects	d) protected
7	If she	hard, she will get	high marks in the	next exam.
	a) studied		c) studies	d) will study





8	They will win the mote	ch if they	well.			
	a) play	b) played	c) plays	d) playing		
9	If you don't eat health	y food, you	be fit.	•		
	a) won't	b) doesn't	c) isn't	d) didn't		
10	If he fi	nish his project, l	ne will have a pro	oblem.		
	a) don't	b) won't	c) doesn't	d) didn't		
C	Read and write the c	orrect form of th	e (word)s betwee	en brackets:		
1	We (mustn't)	respect ou	r teachers.			
2	They must (are)	careful	with the sharp ke	nife.		
3	We must (protected)		r planet from dan	ger.		
4	You (must)	make a lot o	of noise in the cla	ssroom.		
5	If she cooks the lunch	, her mother will	(is)	pleased with her.		
6	We (will)	go to the bead	ch, if the weather	is windy.		
7	If he (do)	sports, he will	l lose weight.			
8	She won't buy a new car if she (don't) save money.					
9	They will get up late i	f they (won't)	sleep	early.		
10	If he (run)	fast, he will	win the race.			
6	Put the words in the	correct order to	make sentences:			
W.						
I	count - before - hatc	n - they - Don't	– cnicken – your.			
	Listanian visit	nless, ere	onu – Thara	444 1414 1994 1994 1994 1994 1994 1994		
2	to – historical – visit –	- places— ure — III	iong = There.			
3	Next week, - a - golr	na — we're — tour	– on.			
-	TICK! WEEK, a go		######################################	рраца и с прфрффффффф у а ининфий у ил фрфффффффффффффффффффффффффффффффффф		
4	We - litter - mustn't -	- drop – water –	ar – waste,	•		
	Anderson constitution to constitution to the property of the end of the property of the end of the property of the end of the property of the end of the property of the end of the property of the end of the en	a 1.4 1.7 1.7 4.4 44 44 44 44 44 44 44 44 44 44 44 44	-482 82 - 7 - 74-by-4-4-4 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	de de la seconda de la despessa de la composição de la composição de la composição de la composição de la comp		
5	birds — are — for — gr	eat — Plants — ins	ects — and.			
		***************************************		σπα πα > α) ή φύμι φά φθολι (ι λιουπιλα Ι (λ.ογ.λ.ος) ο α Ι λαπά θέθε Π		
24)						



Unit 11 How can I help?

Vocabulary

support (v.)	يدعم	volunteer (v)	pining
donate (v.)	يشع	participate (v.)	يشارك
kindergarten class	حضانة / روضة الثَّفقال	hospital	مستشش
better	أفضل	neighbor	jhe.
gloves	ففاؤك	pick up (v.)	<u> विकार</u>
fingers	أمايع	look after (v.)	يعتنى بـ
handle	مليش	grabber	المنتزع
nature camera	كاميرا طيبعية	multi-grip	قيخة متعددة
joystick	عصا التحكم	install (v.)	يابت
record (v)	يسجل	film (v)	Janes.
give back (v.)	پرد الجميل	cantroller	جهاز التحكم
button	ند	press (v.)	يشفط
socialize (v.)	يكون علاقات اجتماعية	confidence	40
fundraising	جمع التربتات	reward	المالية / جائزة
jealous	غيور	sparrow	عصقور
waste	يهدر	university	جامعة
citizen	مواطن	reduce (v.)	يقلل
recycle (v.)	يعيد كدوير	community	patho
blography	سيرة ذاتية	volunteering	التطوع
charity event	حنث خپری	social sciences	العلوم الاجتماعية
community worker	ذاشط اجتماعي	fundraiser	جامع التبرعات
	47 7		



Language Focus

Infinitives of purpose

1. We use "to + a verb in the base form" to explain why we do something.

تحدم ١٥٠ + مصدر النعل، لشرح سب قياميا بشيء ما،

to + (inf.) مصدر القعل بدون أي إضافات) مصدر القعل بدون أي إضافات).





He uses his computer to do his homework.

مدهر جهاز الكميوتر الخاص به لأداء واجباته المدرسية.

We go to the park to play football.

رنذهب للجديقة للبيب كرة القدمي

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام -- Wh- question

2. We also use "to + a verb in the base form" to answer questions with "Why".

الستخدم أيضًا ١٥٠ + مصدر الفعل، للإجابة عن الأسئلة بـ الماذاه.



A: Why do you use a multi-grip?

B: To open jars.

Adverbs

Adverbs are used to describe how things happen or are done.

تستخدم الأحوال لوصف كيفية حدوث الأشياء,



😭 He runs quickly.

We can make adverbs by adding:

يمكننا تكوين الأحوال بإضافة:

البعظم الصفات (١٩٠٠)



بسرعة quick بسرعة quickly

بهدوء puletiy --- مادئ quiet

بصبر patiently 🕳 صبور

بطريقة سيئة badly 🚤 🕳 سيئ bad

بعطف kindly مطوف kindly

بطريفة جبيلة beautifully - جميل



المفات الدتية ترواجرك الادوال وموقف الدان والماقة ([i])

angry — angrily — angrily

happy ---- happily sales

prepulari.

صرعة fast صريع fast وصرعة qood مطريقة جيدة | well

hard ---- hard ---

Adverbs can come after the verb:

الطروف يمكن أن تأثَّن بعد المحل:

subject + verb + odverb ...

She danced beautifully.

Adverbs can come before the verb:

الطروف يمكن أن تأثن قبل مقصل:

subject + adverb + verb ...

He quietly talked to his friend.

تحدث بهدوء مع صديقه.





The adverbs can't come between the verb and its object.

﴿ لَا يَمَكُنَ لَلْأَحُوالَ أَنْ تَأْتَى بِينَ الفَعَلِ وَالْمَقَعُولَ بِهِ.

She quickly learned the rules.

She learned the rules quickly.

She learned quickly the rules.



Exercises on Unit 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1	Our teacher always		be better.	
	a) supports	b) annoys	c) looks	d) participates
2	To " is	to do a job or act	livity and not take	any money for it.
	a) volunteer	b) donate	c) participate	d) support
3	The verb "	" means to take	e part in something	3.
	a) decide	b) participate	c) paint	d) train
4	Mu father was areat	when he	money to he	lp the poor.
	a) decided	b) joined	c) donated	d) started
5	I turned the	and opened	the door.	
	a) handle	b) head	c) nail	d) hall
6	Theu will	a heating and	lighting system in t	he apartment.
	a) play	b) record	c) install	d) film
7	You can move in diffe	rent directions to co	ontral a computer g	jame with the
	a) camera	b) button	c) grip	d) joystick
8	Our teacher installed	the	to film the animal	s in the forest.
	a) grabber	b) nature camer	a c) skate board	d) multi-grip
9	My hands weren't str	ong enough so I u	sed	to open the glass
	bottle.			
	a) nature camera	b) handle	c) multi-grip	d) chair
10	The ""	is a long metal stic	k with two fingers	at the end.
	a) grabber	b) knife	c) oven	d) camera
11	You can use these als	ves to	the trash.	
	a) give up	b) pick up	c) look after	d) give back
12	The ""	is something you	press to make som	ething happen.
	a) bottle	b) button	c) handle	d) break
13	" is to	collect money for	a charity.	
	a) Interview	b) Confidence	c) Fundraising	_
14	You must	and interact w	ith people In a frie	ndly way.
	a) organize	b) collect	c) receive	d) socialize
15	Doing sports gives yo)u		
	a) trips	b) confidence	c) illness	d) advice



Read and complete the text with words in the box:

a) quiet

a) good

(F	Read and comple	ete the text with wor		
6	nei	ghbors - citizen - wo	oste – plane – red	:ycle
	respect others and are old or sick. The If you have plasti	d be polite and kind t nen, you can reduce	o your(2)(2)	
•	Volunteerin	ig – socialize – give i	back – look after	teenagers
	also gives you confidence when	ind talk to people yo onfidence. It's amazi they start valunteer	u wouldn't usuall ng to see how jng. Fundraising	teer. You learn how to y meet(2)
6		t answer from a, b, c, c		
6				
1	A:	does she wear this h		her hair from the sun.
	a) What	b) Who	c) Why	d) When
2	She bought chicke	n toi		
	a) feeding	b) feed	c) feeds	d) fed
3	I went to the mark	et to	some sugar.	
	a) buy	b) bought	c) buys	d) buying
4	The girl was singir	ng at	the party.	
	a) happy	b) sad	c) bad	d) happily.
5	He doesn't like pla	ying chess. He plays	it	es 4
	a) well	b) badly	c) easily	d) happily
6	My friend ate his :	sandwich	9999001270 F	
	a) hungry	b) hungrily		d) kind
7	The baby is crying	beco	ause he/she can't	sleep.





d) good

d) slowly

c) happily

c) quickly

b) loudly

b) well

8 My father is a doctor.

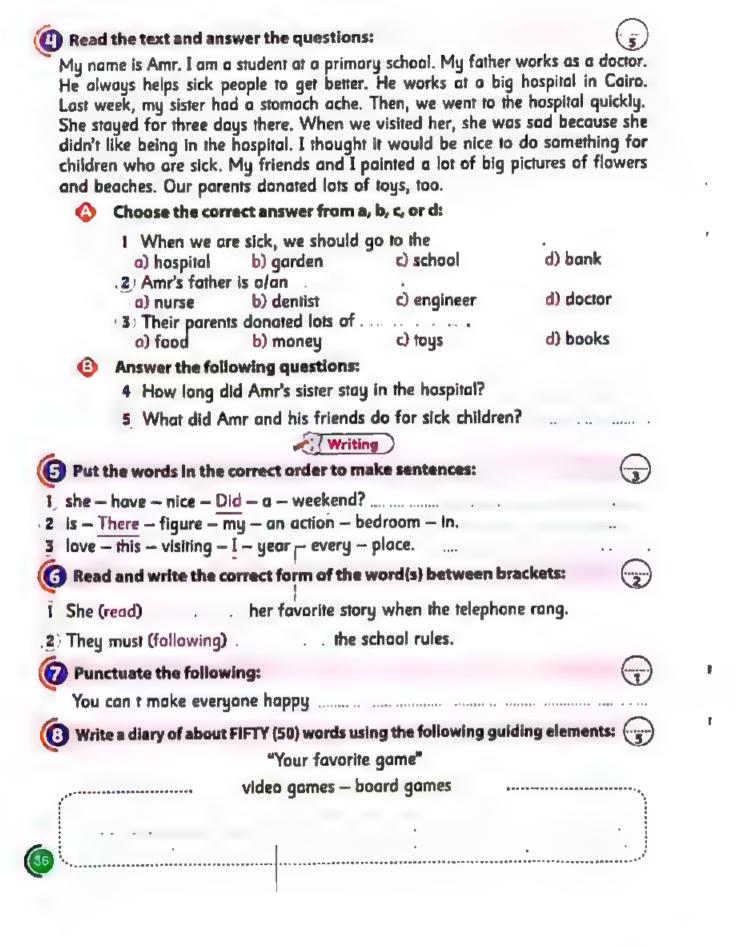
9	He runs	, no one in our te	am can beat him.			
	a) slow	b) quiet	c) fast	d) beautiful		
10	He talks			* 1 *		
	a) patient	b) sad	c) angrily	d) bad		
0	Read and write the corr	ect form of the (wo	rd)s between brack	ets:		
1,	He used this app (for)	lear	n a new language			
2	A: (What)	do you get up e	early? B. To do my	homework.		
3	Sara went to the library	to (borrowing)	some	books.		
4	Amira listens to English	songs to (helps)	her im	prove the language.		
,5	You must study (hardly) to	pass your test.			
.6	We plays football (goo	d)	. We practice it a l	ot.		
Ž.	He waited (patient)	for the	plane to arrive.			
8	The students answer al	the questions (ea	sy)	-		
9	She is so calm. She alv	vays speaks (quiet	Manager Manager and Constitution I			
19	They are (well)	players.				
6	Put the words in the c	correct order to m	ake sentences:			
-	wanted to — children —					
٠		-				
2	parents — toys — My —	· lots of - too - do	nated.			
		~4.77 EV E F F F F F F F F F F F F F F F F F	************************************	0000440###############################		
3.	3, are – project – We – doing – a wildlife – school – at,					
4	you - need to - a gam	ne <u>Do</u> with p				
\$	older — didn't — any —			4 (12 (10 (10 (10 (10 (10 (10 (10 (10 (10 (10		







6						
(a. best - b. pets - c. big - d. pests)						
2 They really						
gerous.						
•						
My name is Mazen. I'm in grade six. I love reading, so I decided to(1)(1)						
out in the kindergarten class on Thursday by reading to the children. I love						
oo. We're						
ext week.						





Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



I Dina is writing a . . . of Goha's stories

(a. book - b. story - c. review - d. notebook)

2 The story is about a man who goes to the
(a. market - b. shop - c. store - d. shop)

3 The setting is in the . . (a. river - b. countryside - c. town - d. city)

4 It is really a story.

(a, bad - b, funny - c, sad - d, scary)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 To ". " means to spend time with people in a friendly way.

a) give back b) socialize c) respect d) whisper

2 When two things are , they might look the same or do the same things.

a) different b) difficult c) similar d) difference

3 Holidays for eco-tourists often have simple

a) habitats b) houses c) apartments d) accommodation

4 If people learn more about the environment, they'll want to . it.

a) trade b) protect c) damage d) feel

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

modern - traded - Gold - jewelry - weapons

I read about the great Ancient Egyptians and found out that they (1) with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They used metal to make tools and (2), so that they could hunt. (3) and silver were popular metals for making (4) and art to sell. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptians' economy. We should be proud of them.

Read the text and answer the questions:



Egypt is an amazing country. A lot of tourists come to visit Egypt from all over the world. There are lots of activities to do in Egypt and there are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums, tourists can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on

a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. Tourism is really important, but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment and it's more sustainable than traditional tourism.

	Ch	oose the corre	ct answer from	n a, b, c, or d:	
	1	301	b) small	country.	d) terrible
		a) bad			
	2			ge" means c) destroy	d) repair
		g) fix	b) mend	-	•
	3	a) history	b) scared	places to visit in Egg c) historical	d) bored
(3)	An	swer the follow	wing question	s:	
				wo sentences	
	5	What activitie	s can tourists	do in Egypt?	*************
				riting	-
(A) Put	the	words in the co	orrect order to	make sentences:	(3)
-					•
1 farm	ers -	– a lot – produ	ce - Egyptian	— grain — of	>4412448844884499\$448846> 4 6 154 5 4
2 the -	bire	i – The – worn	n – early – ca	iches	
				ain	
				he word(s) between br	
1) If we	go	to the zoo, we	(does)	see a lot of anim	nals.
2 I was	s (a	t all)	good at h	olding, but I preferred s	kipping.
-		ate the followin			•
i thi	ink s	snorkeling is re	ally amazing .	>>>====	
				ing the following guiding	
9			"Iron in Anci		_
	(V	Why was Iron s	pecial for Anc	lent Egyptians?	
******		What did the And			,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	0	11101 010 1110 1			
4(***)*****	-48444444	4410	\$15447744 == 14+612 46199 \$445 44		######################################
p ====================================	94=== <u>0</u> (4)	20.40	@8888888777	** ****************************	
*****	• • • • • •				**************************************





		& Listening			
(1) Listen and	circle the correct	answer from a, b, c, c	ord:	6	
Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: I love playing all kinds of (a. videos - b. games - c. foods - d. cards) At school, we usually play (a. hide and seek - b. hopscotch - c. video games - d. skipping) My often beats me. (a. father - b. sister - c. brother - d. family) 4 I play video games for about a/an on the weekend.					
, -	b. month — c. hou	•			
(2) Choose the	correct answer f	rom a, b, c, or d:			
a) Wisdom		om plants used to ma c) Tears not easy to find.	ke flour and bread. d) Grain		
a) rare 3 " a) Give up	b) common " is to help other b) Make	c) durable ers because you have c) Give back	d) tough received so much. d) Hurt		
4 I want to ha	ve a on y	our skateboard.	D. f		
-	b) goomplete the text	c) make with the words in the	d) beat e box:		
()		our — boats — tents —			

Hi, I am Eslam, I am so excited because I am going on a ...(1). . . to see the birds and animals which live near the water. I am going there with my friends. We will travel along the river in small (2) , and camp in (3) at night. We hope to see (4) and turtles. I am sure that it will be amazing.

Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Sara and I live in a beautiful city. I was born in Alexandria. I enjoyed studying science and decided to become a scientist when I grow up. I worked hard and studied well to join the university in Alexandria. There, I learned how to use science to look after the environment and Egypt's culture. I also entered



a problem-solving competition for scientists around the world. I started studying ways for villages to clean dirty water in a natural way and to recycle used water. I did a project which could help to stop water pollution.

W	Choose	the corr	ect answer from	a, b, c, or d:	
	1 Sara	was bo	rn in		
	a) C	airo	b) Luxor	c) Alexandria	d) Aswan
	2 She	decided	to be a	eco-6+40+40+0+10	
	a) d	octor	b) scientist	c) gardener	d) nurse
	3 She	did a pr	aject which coul	d help to stop	pollution
	a) a		b) noise	c) water	d) map
(3)	Answer	the follo	wing questions		
	4 Whr	at did So	ra do to join the	university?	******* *****************
				niversity?	
			Wri النظم		•
Put t	he word:	s in the c	orrect order to	make sentences:	(
la turde	ant - c	fton _ fi	ch - plants - ar	- Those.	
Diras -	- ear - o	11611 — 11	Sit — plains — or		4158000188855850000000000000000000000000
a bit -	- ī - uev	/ous – w	as — tirst — at	4	***************************************
too	You - ge	:t — to —	close — birds — t	he - mustn't	********************
D-0-	d manal social	an aho ce	esect form of th	e word(s) between bra	ckets: (
Ancle	nt Egypti	ans (teat	ch)	their monkeys differe	nt tricks.
If I (w	os)	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	. hungry, I'll eat	a snack.	
		. #=11=	ina:		(
Dune	tunto th	e tollow			
	tuate th			nd	
did y	ou go to	the mus	eum last weekei	nd	
did y	jou go to	the mus	eum last weekei out FIFTY (50) we	ords to tell your friend a	bout your visit
did y	jou go to	the mus	eum last weekei out FIFTY (50) we		bout your visit
did y	jou go to	the mus	eum last weekei out FIFTY (50) we	ords to tell your friend a	bout your visit
did y Wri	jou go to ite an em the Muse	the mus	eum last weeker out FIFTY (50) wo scient History us	ords to tell your friend a	bout your visiting elements:
did y	jou go to ite an em the Muse	the mus ail of abo um of Ar	seum last weeker out FIFTY (50) wo ncient History us	ords to tell your friend a ing the following guidi	bout your visiting elements:
did y Wri to t	jou go to ite an em the Muse	the mus	eum last weeker out FIFTY (50) wo icient History us	ords to tell your friend a ing the following guiding	bout your visiting elements:
did y Wri to t	ite an em the Muse	the mus	eum last weeker out FIFTY (50) we ncient History us	ords to tell your friend a ing the following guiding	bout your visiting elements:
did y Wri to t	ite an em the Muse	the mus	eum last weeker out FIFTY (50) we ncient History us	ing the following guiding	bout your visiting elements:
did y Wri to t	ite an em	the mus	eum last weeker out FIFTY (50) we ncient History us	ords to tell your friend a ing the following guiding	bout your visiting elements:





-			-			
(Listen and	circle the correct	answer from a, b,	c, or d:	6	
1	Many water migrate to Egypt.					
	(a. animals — b. people — d. birds — c. children)					
2	You can see large flacks of them such as near water.					
	(a. swifts - b. eagles - c. falcons - d. pelicans)					
3	These birds often eat fish or that live in rivers.					
	(a. parks – b. plants – c. grass – d. plans)					
4	Many birds	migrate to find	weath	er,		
	(a. sunny -	b. rainy - c. war	m – d. cold)			
	•	_	Reading			
E	Choose the	correct answer i	from a, b, c, or d:			
1	Ancient Equ	ptians	cats. This mean	s they loved them so	much.	
	a) hated		c) adored			
Ž	To "			than someone in a g	ame.	
	a) lose		e) buy			
3	You must pr	-	to start the rac			
	a) button	b) game	c) puddle	d) card		
4	4 Be with that sharp knife or you will hurt yourself.					
	a) crazy	b) careful	c) lazy	d) careless		
C	Read and c	amplete the text	with the words in	the hove		
6	nebu ana c	ompiete the text	With the Noice in	ine box:		
		action figures – n	nade up — box — fu	nny – delicious		
	Last week, I	went to see my g	randparents. I went	to their house with m	ny family.	
	I found a	(1) of i	my old toys at this	house. There were a	lot of my	
				Man I really enloyed		

Read the text and answer the questions:

My grandma made us(4)...... lunch,



My name is Eslam. I am going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on my vacation. My friend, Samir is going with me. We are really

with it. I lots of games for them. We enjoyed our time there.





excited about that. We will set off on a tour from the beach in small boots, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs. The tour is only on Sunday and Thursday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips.

		•	-	
(A)	Choose the correct answer from a	ı, b, c, or d:		
	I The general idea of the text is	about " ".		
	a) A visit to the museum	b) A snorkel safe		
	c) A visit to a school	d) A tour to wate	:h birds	
	2 There are colored fish and	there.	av d	
	a) coral reefs b) grass	c) roofs	d) sand	
	3 The underlined verb "set off"	means	d) drink	
	a) move b) sleep	C) Edi	G/ GITTIK	
(3)	Answer the following questions:			
	4 Why is the tour only on Sund	ay and Thursday?		
	5 What can they see there?			
	Writin	ng		
0	the words in the correct order to m			
Put	tue words in the correct order to in	ane settences:		(1)
doesi	n't — Eco-tourism — the — damage —	environment.		
	- In Egypt - are - places - There			
_	the - We're - to - a tour - going -			
			-drakes	
Read	d and write the correct form of the	word(s) between Dri	ickets:	(2)
They	played the match (good)	yesterday.		
_	vere (watch) the mov	ie at 9 pm last night.		
	ctuate the following:			W
have	you started the project yet	•		
Writ	te a blog of about FIFTY (50) words u	sing the following guid	ding element:	s:(<u>-</u>)
	*Desert ha			
	Which animals can	you see there?		
	What is the weather li			
+				



		O Prizenting		
6	Listen and circle the corre	ct answer from a, b, c,	or d:	6
3	My favorite toy was a	- c. skateboard – d. rol and playing the . bank – d. park) i pads. ot – d. stomach) hen I was	re.	
		Reading		
C	Choose the correct answer	r from a, b, c, or d:		•
1	To " " is to take p	part in something.		
	a) donate b) support He deserves a	c) participate	d) give	
_	a) punish b) reward		d) litter	
3	We mustour			
Ĭ	a) destroy b) play		d) disturb	
4	We should encourage more	•		
	a) green spaces b) planes		d) trash	
(Read and complete the te	ext with the words in th	e box:	4
	tigers — you	ng — distances — falcon	s – happy	
	Lot of interesting birds misswifts. I feel(2)	when I see those bird. Some birds fly very logger. Even(4)	s. And there are mar ong(3) birds that migrat	ny water making
6	Read the text and answer	the questions:		
6	nead the text and answer	tile questions.	h.cc	5

Last week, I read a story about two brothers who were very different. They had different styles. The older brother was greedy and loved money. He had a big farm and a lot of sheep. The younger brother was a very simple person.





He loved helping others. Although the older brother was rich, he never helped his younger brother. One day, the younger brother found a bird with broken wing. He cared for the bird all winter, and gave it food. The bird thanked him and gave him a big reward. He was so happy because he became the richest one in the village.

4	Choose the corre	ect answer from a	a, b, c, or d:				
	1 The general idea of the text is about a .						
	a) baok b) movie		c) tour	d) story			
	a) heading	b) losing		d) cleaning			
	3 The two brothers lived in a. a) town b) city		c) sea	d) village			
(B)	Answer the follo	owing questions:					
	4 What did the	e older brother ha	ive?	49 4+ 4			
	5 Who become	e the richest one	at the end of the stor	ry? ,			
		Writi	ng				
(Put	the words in the a	correct order to m	ake sentences:	(3)			
3 do -	— didn't — me — p play — hide — <u>Wh</u> d and write the co	ien – seek – you		rackets:			
1 (Da) 2 You (you ire (at all)	u do your homew good at pl	ork yesterday? aying football. You t	win all the matches.			
Pun	ctuate the follow	ing:					
	nt does this prover		4 · Approved in				
(B) Write	e a Text of about FIF	TY (50) words using (the following guiding e	lements:			
6	"A	description of you	ir favorite game"				
		What is					
	*****	How often do y	ou play It?	**************************************			
† 6 8 8							
		*******************************	,	***************************************			
44							



(1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 The Ancient Egyptians started using many years ago.

(a. silver - b. liquid - c. iron - d. plastic)

2 They worked with and bronze before they used iron.
(a. copper - b. gold - c. cartoon - d. gas)

3 Ancient Egyptions made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb.

(a. farmers - b. carpenters - c. craftsmen - d. doctors)

4 They mined iron from the
(a. sky - b. ground - c. river - d. floor)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 We should protect our environment and eco-tourism.

a) prevent b) support c) decrease d) stop

2 There are thousands of ibises in Saggara alone.

a) mummified b) killed c) popular d) colored

There is a shall to the deals

3 There is a chair to the desk,

a) in front b) behind c) next d) on

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4 · To " " is to wrap in cloth to preserve for a very long time.

a) memorize b) remember c) mummify d) flash

4

confidence - Fundraising - socialize - damage - teenagers

Doing voluntary work is very important. When you volunteer, you learn many important life skills. You learn how to

(1). and talk to people you don't usually meet. It also gives you

(2) . It's amazing to see how

(3) grow in confidence when they start volunteering.

(4)

helps charities get the money they need. Volunteering is a great job.

(1) Read the text and answer the questions:



Thera a lot of different habitats in our country, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism,





people can come on wildlife watching holidays. This is good for the country and good for the people, too. I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet.

1		•			
4	Ch	oose the corre	ct answer from a,	b, c, or d:	
	1	The general id	dea of the text is a	bout tuodi	
		a) planets	b) different peop	ole c) different habitats	d) mountains
	2		pla		0 4.5
	_	a) boring	b) dangerous		d) terrible
	3		ot isb) strange	., lot of animals can li-	ve in one place. d) terrible
A	A	_	wing questions:	e, neumig	d) leffible
•				mentioned in the text	•
				sentences.	
	. 3	Summigrize in	- Arms		
6			Writing		
Put 1	the	words in the co	rrect order to ma	ke sentences:	(3)
1 neigh	bor	– always – is -	- kind - us - My	– to	***************************************
2 give -	- Fir	rst, – want – I -	- a reward - to -	you	
				– summer.	
_					_
(6) Read	i an	d write the cor	rect form of the w	ord(s) between brack	iets:
i) She o	insv	vered the test (e	asy)	6F B	
2, I (trav	/el)	to Par	ris last year.		
(Pun	chus	ate the followin			
					Ū
-				***************************************	
(B) Write	e a t	ext of about FIF	TY (50) words usin	g the following guiding	elements:
			"Animals in Ancie	ent Egypt"	
		Which animo	als did Ancient Eg	yptians want to keep?	
	****		were cats importa		***************************************
4004140111401000	******		(-)6639841675452841 14574816181848484		# 11 **********************************
49901494199999	*******	000 - D-1 D-1 D-1 D-1 D-1 D-1 D-1 D-1 D-1 D	14 ++ 1 7 0 3 + 0 7 4 5 6 7 0 6 6 8 7 8 4 8 8 8 7 8 7 8 8 8 8 7 8 7 8 8 8 8	1449944466666664-119498816 A0444	6 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8
*************		======================================			***************************************







		Listening		
1 Listen an	d circle the correct	answer from a, b,	c, or d:	6
1 My friend (a. forest - 2 The sun w (a. giving 3 We were h (a. games 4 Osama wa	Osama and I were b. beach — c. par as b. shining — c. co aping to see animo b. movies — c. to	playing in the rk — c. school) aring — d. going) als and ays — d. birds) to enter the hous	there.	
-				
Choose t	he correct answer	from a, b, c, or d:		(···,··)
1 Birds of a	flact		· d) arm	•
	armers produce a l	ot of	•	
a) gray	b) grain	c) games	d) fish	
3 The writer	arranges a happy	to the	e story.	
a) meal	b) ending	c) plane	d) back	

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

preserve - climate - School - durable - sink

c) damage

d) play

people to be better.

I went to the Museum of Ancient History last week. I met some students who are at Egyptian Eagles Primary (1). I learned about Ancient Egyptians artifacts. The (2) is hot and dry in Egypt. That's why many artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to (3) the artifacts. I knew that the Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and (4)... stone.

(4) Read the text and answer the questions:

b) shout

4 · We always

a) support

This is a story of Mary and her grandparents. They lived by the sea. There was a beach near their house. It was quiet and beautiful and she loved to go there with her grandparents. They did a lot of activities there. They swam, surfed, and



played games on the sand. One day, they were swimming in the sea when Mary saw a glass bottle in the water. Her grandpa took it, wrote a message on a piece of paper. Then, he folded the paper. Finally, he put the paper in the bottle and threw it out to sea for someone else to find.

threw	if OL	it to sea for so	omeone else fo	Tina.			
A	Ch	oose the corre	ect answer fro	m a, b, c, or d:			
	1	They lived by	, the	daspacer. A			
		a) aarden	b) sea	c) bank		bottle	
	2			bottle when she was	s swimming	in the sea.	
			b) plastic	_	d)	glasses	
	3		uiet" means		d) I	hard	
			b) noisy	_	(i)	nara	
(3)	An	swer the folio	wing question	ns:			
	4	What activiti	es did they do	at the beach?		, = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = =	•
	5	Summarize t	he story in two	sentences,	.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	******************	-
			₩ W	riting			
(A) Put	the	words in the c	orrect order to	make sentences:			•
				- other?		3	,
				the — a little			
-				of - <u>You</u> - there			
(G) Rea	d an	d write the co	rrect form of	the word(s) betwee	n brackets:	(2)
1 She	was	(qo)	home wh	en she met Amira.			
				(won't)	be sick.		
-		_					1
		ate the follow				T	1
				any water birds			
		an email of FIF	TY (50) words	to tell your friend a	bout your f	avorite	1
St.	ory:						
						17 / 32	2
From	n		************				
To		* ***********************	DDECEMBER OF DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY OF TH			02/202044100124	
Sub	ject		34 > 2 - 4 - 4 4 4 4 6 12 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14	** ***********************************	*****	,, 4.0.0000	
*******	*******	*****************	4 = 4 > 10 - 00 a d 6 9 H				
1				B			
				m			
48	******						
48							



	3 64	istening)	
6	Listen and circle the correct answer	r from a, b, c, or d	
1	King Midas was walking in his		
	(a. house – b. garden – c. company		
2	He tripped over a strange-looking		
	(a. sheep $-$ b. goat $-$ c. cat $-$ d. hors		
3	The king took it to his		
4	(a. cattle - b. candle - c. castle - d.		
•	(a. toy - b. food - c. corn - d. water		
		eding	
6			
6	Choose the correct answer from a,	b, c, or d:	
1	This weather is for a p	icnic. It's perfect.	
	a) angry b) ideal c).	sick	d) ugly
2	When you feel, you're unhapp	oy because someo	ne has what you want.
	a) jealous b) excited c)	pleased	d) happy
3	I enjoyed when I went		
	a) snorkeling b) studying c)		d) fighting
4	The is the person who		25.1 41.1
_	a) character b) moral c) i	narrator	d) builder
(3	Read and complete the text with th	e words in the bo	x: (4)
	litter - roof - tourists	- coral reefs - p	aces
	I enjoy reading about the amazing place called The Ras Mohammed Nat place for locals and(2) to to snorkel and scuba dive. You can colored fish, and maybe sharks. But beach, which is very bad for animals.	ional Park on the visit. People come see(3)(3)	Red Sea. It is a fantastic e from all over the world and lots of brightly
P	Read the text and answer the quest	ions:	5
-	Our teacher talked about the different	ways to be a good	citizen. I was so excited
	to know about them. We should resp	ect others and be	polite and kind to our





neighbors. You can help people who are sick or you can call your neighbor to offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home. Try to reduce waste and help the environment. Don't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, recycle them. Let's be good citizens and make the world a better place.

(A)	Choose the co	rrect answer from	a, b, c, or d:	
	1 ' We should	be	to the others.	
	b) angry	b) rude	c) unkind	d) polite
		ined word "recycle		
	a) reuse	b) replay	c) repaint	d) record
	3 Try to	waste a	nd help the environment	
	_	b) destroy	c) reduce	d) reorder
₿		llowing questions		
		you do to heip you		
	5 Summarize	e how to be a goo	d citizen	
		Write	ting	
(A) Put I	the words in the	e correct order to a	make sentences:	
				(3)
		oat — wish — the ki		
2 like –	· ali — games — i	kinds of — They —	playing,	
3 she -	wos — night —	Why - sad - last?	114	
(G) Read	d and write the	correct form of th	e word(s) between brac	kets:
آ كم م	anned the deer (Consist	because his little broth	er was sleening
-th.	pened the door (ici was siceping.
<u>&</u> 100 T	nustn't (leaving)	. you	ir trash in the garden.	_
7 Pun	ctuate the follo	wing:		①
whe	n she met her fr	iends, they were h	iaving lunch . ,	
(B) Writ	te a text of abou	ut FIFTY (50) word	s using the guiding eler	15 / 22
		"Snorkel		15 / 32
			water photography	
		Oldi IECIS SIGEI	Walti buoro 3. child	
,		* * *	A +	•
1			,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	





1			
	Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d	: (-	
1	Amira lives on the	`	y)
	(a. village - b. coast - b. roof - d. desert)		
2	She enjoys her boat.		
_	(a. selling – b. watching – c. diving – d. sailing)		
3	She found a in a bottle.		
4	(a. text — b. message — c. maral — d. toy)		
т.	She was when she read it.		
	(a. sad - b. tired - c. bored - d. surprised)		
1	Reading		
E	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:	(<u>-</u>
Ĭ	Press the to turn on the radio.		
	a) handle b) stick c) button	d) grabber	
2	The of the story is the country.	J	
	a) narrator b) setting c) moral	d) character	
3 1	"means to have what you need, and no	-	
4	a) Sustainable b) Simple c) Ideal	d) Perfect	
7	To "" means to do things that help a particular p	- ,	
_	a) participate b) join c) support	d) organize	
(3	Read and complete the text with the words in the bo	ж:	
	mummified - dangerous - wisdom - safe	status	
	The Ancient Egyptians liked animals and kept them as perbelieved that cats looked after them and kept them	(1)	nt ed is
C	Read the text and answer the questions:		
	My friend Samy and I were playing in the forest of	t 12 30 pm uesterde	
	We enjoyed our time there. It was a lovely afternoon of	and the sun was shining	a.
	We weren't far from our home, and we were hoping	to see some interesting	1 a 2.
			7

animals and birds. We were walking along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. All told me to enter the house, but I was a bit scared and I didn't want to enter. Finally, I followed him and we found a big treasure there. We were so happy.

Chapse the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

there.	We	were so happy	y.			
4	Cho	ose the corre	ct answer from a	, b, c, or d:		
	1	They were	from	their home.		
		c) far	b) near	c) above	d) on	
	2		d word "scared"		- 4	
		a) afraid	b) pleased	c) funny	d) busy	
	3	It was a nice			15 6	
		a) evening	b) morning	c) dawn	d) afterno	on
(3)	An:	wer the follow	ving questions:			
	4.	What were the	ey doing when t	ney saw a little ho	use?	
	ŝ.	What did theu	find in the little	house? , "	- 44 AF I	
		_	Writin			
(Put	the v	ords in the co	rrect order to m	ake sentences:		3
-			– Jha – is – M			
			d — after — it — k			
3 did -	che	_ What _ wee	kend — do — last	?	14 + 41 -	
_					h — -1	
				word(s) between		2
i A: W	Vere u	ou watching t	he football match	n yesterday evenir	ıg?	
		be)				
2 I hea	ard tw	o people laug	hing (loud)			
Pun	ictna	te the followir	ıg:			W
		-	g		re anaddabdettiit teenst we de	
(B) Writ	te a to	ext of about FIF	TY (50) words usi	ng the following gu	ilding elements:	(5)
			"How can you h			
************			support —	project		
(,	





 Listen and circle the corre 	ect answer from a, b, c, or d:
1 The images in	video games are amazing.



(a. ancient - b. modern - c. bad - d. old)

2 He has got a new games

(a. racket - b. controller - c. console - d. button)

3 His sister enjoys playing games, (a. scientific – b. scary – c. terrible – d. adventure)

4 Video games can be a when you play them too much.

(a. solution - b. problem - c. toy - d. shop)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



I If something is , this means that someone has thought about it carefully.

a) sensible b) scared

c) lazy d) bared

2 " " Is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment.

a) Flying plansb) Snorkeling c) Eco-tourism d) Diving

3 The Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with

a) grain b) plastic

c) granite

d) oil

4. We use the nature camera to how many animals and birds we see.

a) record

b) support

c) organize

d) meet

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



I think we should all try to (1) animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. We can all think about things we can do to protect those habitats. For example, we mustn't

recycle – grow – waste – protect – watch

(2) water or drop litter. We can (3) paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also (4) flowers and plants because these are great for birds and insects.

(a) Read the text and answer the questions:



Last week, we did a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two nature cameras in the forest. We used them to film the wildlife. He put one on



the ground to film animals at night. He put the other one on a tree to film birds during the day. Then we recorded how many animals and birds we saw, and what they were doing. It was so interesting. We've learned a lot! I hope to try this project again. Our teacher will do it again if we study hard. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1 They did a project at school. c) wildlife d) sea b) park a) forest 2 He put the nature camera to film animals at d) afternoon c) morning b) night 3 The underlined word "Interesting" means d) terrible c) tiring a) amazing b) boring Answer the following questions: 4 What will happen if they study hard? 5 Summarize the passage in two sentences. Writing Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 1 Is - a haspital - house - in front of - your - there? 2. She — good — skipping — is — so — at. 3. needs — buy — to — She — money — a dress. 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: enough money. 1. He will buy a new camera if he (have) 2: They (doesn't) sleep late last night. Punctuate the following: They mustn t speak loudly in the library Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: "Birds migration" Why do many birds migrate to different countries? Which birds can you see in Egypt?





Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 People who go watching will have lots to see.

(a. bird -b, theater -c, film -d, video)

2 People mustn't get too to the birds.

(a. far - b. fast - c. close - d. much)

3 They can take lots of

(a. papers - b. cameras - c. photos - d. birds)

4 Wildlife is ideal for people who nature.

(a. harm – b. respect – c. damage – d. hurt)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 A " is an object made of stone or another material to look like a person or animal.

a) statue b) mummify c) grain d) wisdom

2 My favorite was Spider-Man. I enjoyed playing with it.

a) hobby b) action figure c) film d) book

3 She learned how to with people at her work. She is so friendly.

a) deliver b) socialize c) watch d) donate

4 The of this story is that crime doesn't pay.

a) character b) moral c) cartoon d) setting

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



trash - gloves - handle - grabber- sing

We do a beach clean-up every summer. We wear (1) to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the (2) we collect. We use a (3) to pick up the trash. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the (4) at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash.

Read the text and answer the questions:



There are a lot of amazing games. At the weekend, I have some free time so I play games with my friends. My friend Shady prefers playing board games. I think



board games are quite boring. I don't really like them. I love playing hide and seek. No one can find me. I am good at hiding. I can hide for a very long time. We can also play hopscotch. We use different colored chalk to draw the squares. My friend Samy is quite good at hopscotch, but I always beat him.

-	_					
A			ct answer fron			
	1 The u	nderline		es" is a kind of		
		apes		c) meals	d) chi	ps
	2 Samy	is quite	good at		d) bo	nceatch
	a) hid	e and seel	(b) skipping	c) football	d) No	pscotch
		in niae i ort	or ab) long	c) small	d) lini	e
A			ving question			
•				the squares?		
			_	ine squarest	[4]001100441044n444114444644) \$44 t Saaso 4 m sama t
	2 AAttel	i ao mej	play games?			
			Wr.			
(Put	the words	in the co	rrect order to	make sentences:		(-3-)
				ries — other — trad	ed.	
) Willi	- Itle Aitt	iem Egy	M/h= sha	racter - in?		14847744114411
				environment		
(G) Rea	d and write	the cor	rect form of ti	ie word(s) betwee	n brackets:	(3)
They	(be)	.4,444400000+844411	building sand	castles yesterday r	norning.	
(2) She I	s a (well)	441111111111111111111111111111111111111	doctor. S	he helps many sic	k people.	
	ctuate the					
						•
	_			\$662.1404.1404.)+404#Ph0PP41.hH01104404		
(B) Write	te a text of	about FII	FTY (50) words	using the following	guiding eleme	ents: (5)
			"Ways to be a	good citizen"		
		How	do we protect	the environment?		
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	4	Hov	do you help	your neighbors?	*****	.,
			_	**** , ********************************		
011(2025-10444)	PPRP466000 FINESOGN 15:			P44114001PBBB41D94094104+771104441DDD444D	*******)
	ppssam-see+++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++					***************************************
•						



Al-Azhar Exams





Read and complete the dialog:



_					
		weekend	- picnic - hiking - boot -	- Park	
Sa Ha Ha	ma : Yes, I w mza : What d ma : We had mza : Did you	ent to Al-Azh id you do the l a ı go		family.	e.
_		2) Vocabulary and Structure	15	
C	Read and cir	cle the odd o	ne out:		10
2 3 4	sailing — divin narrator — end playing — wat How — Why — found — gave	ding - sleep ching - keep - Do - Which	– character – growing	C	
(Choose the	correct answ	er from a, b, c, or d:		10
Ţ,	They didn't	}****************	any help. They were creat	live.	
	a) needed	b) needs	c) need	d) to need	
. 2			it happens and is		
_	a) real		c) false	d) bad	
3	We played the	e match	***************************************	0	
. д	a) good	t the	c) quick	a) easy	
7	a) grabber			and the second s	
5	_		ell, you won't be active.	d) buildit	
-	a) doesn't	b) won't	c) don't	d) hasn't	
6	You can	was	ste and help the environme		
	a) drop	b) reduce	c) replay	d) make	
7	She goes to the	e town to	a new dress.		
n	a) buy	b) bought	c) buys	d) buying	
8	a) reserve	ways uses sa b) buy	lt to food.	d) preserve	
	-7	o, 00g	W HEM	d) preserve	57



9	He isr	ı't	C	good at m	ath.			
	a) too		b) very		c) at all		d) much	
10		of a fee	ather		together.		40	
	a) flo	ck	b) black		c) run		d) eat	
			1	(C) Rec	iding Compi	ehension)	
(Read	the fo	llowing pa	ssage, th	en answer	the questi	ons:	(10)
	them of and k because	nd there and kept ept the se cats t Answe W	was a cat them safe, houses fre helped then er the follo hat does t	in almost They wer of pests hill the n wing que he underli	every hous e also good like mice nice and ra estions:	e. They bell I pets becou and snakes is who wan un "They"	leved that cleans they cleans. Farmers attend to eat a	specially adored ats looked after aned themselves also liked them grain.
					,	nera:		
	(3)		hy were the	_	er from a, i	. c. or d:	,	
	0							
		a)	dogs	b) snal	s adored ces nted to eat	c) cais		d) horses
			cats	b) grai		c) cake		d) chocolate
					D) Writin	19		
(Reo	rder the	words to	make co	rrect sente	nces:		100
2 3 (4	Werer We -	d the i't at - drop	– speakir – They – s	ng - with sleeping - street - a	7 pm — y 11 — litter —	nglish tead esterday.	her.	11
6						o your frie	nd to tell h	im about
1	yid	leo gaπ	nes using t	these gul	ding eleme	ents:		(In)
		pla	y — build -	- adventui	re game –	bricks – go	imes consc	ole
		_						000
	Fron	- :		444 f- 4 ft f ft f ft f ft f ft f ft f	************	4112014-1-101111111111111		2466270006600070000660##
	Ть		Market Anniel Control of the Control		************************		***********************	(LA111A44444444444444444444
	Subj	ect 1	hate			**************	rd e d I e od debour ree ond I rad au m	25550
t	fereigner		p#####################################		***************************************			}********
58								
		.,,	4 410411199 1114-14111				**************************************	



Read and	complete the di	alog:		10
	games — play —	chalk - hopscotch - l	hide and seek	
Sara : What Amira : I though Sara : I really Amira : How di	ht(1)(2)(d)(4)(d) different colo	did you like playing w was fun. I was goo (3) with my	hen you were younger of at hiding. friends. drow the squares.	?
Read and o	ircle the odd or			(10)
3 liked - grew	kly – badly – so v – touched – co – good – quick	ad illed	C)
-		from a, b, c, or d:		10
a) quiet 2 The verb " a) break	b) bad " m b) park	because he is hu c) loudly eans to take part in so c) participate to the house.	d) sad	
a) in front	b) nextcomping, we s	c) behind tay in a		
5 Yesterday, I.		c) tent t home all day, c) was	d) boat d) am	
6 The rules of		ery L		
a) simpleShe Is a verya) lazy	b) scared b) creative	c) ugly person, All people sup c) bad		
8 They		ey met Ahmed.	d) small d) runs	
9 The " a) star	" is a ver	y hard and strong stor	ne used for building.	_
u) alul	er granne	c) paper	d) leather	-



10 Did y			
a) sa			
-	C) Reading Comprehension		
(C) Rea	d the following passage, then answer the questions:	10	
neight you co protec	other told us the ways that make everyone a good citizen. Be policors. Help people who are old ar sick. You should call your new help. You can offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at the environment. You can reduce waste and help the environment bottles at home, recycle them.	ighbors to ask how at home. You should	
(4)	Answer the following questions:		
	1) What should we do with our neighbors?		
	2 How can you protect the environment?		
•	3) Summarize the text in one sentence.		
(3)	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:		
	You can waste and help the environment. a) increase	d) reduce	
	a) increase b) use c) drop 5) If you have bottles at home, recycle them.	a, reader	
	a) metal b) paper c) plastic	d) wood	
	D) Writing		
(Rec	rder the words to make correct sentences:	10	
1 you	– study – <u>Did</u> – last – English – night?		
(2) She	- this - loves - place - visiting - year - every.		
3 Why	- many - we - artifacts - do - have?		
4 foun	d - of - toys - old - I - a box - my.		
(5) are -	- places — Egypt — <u>There</u> — historical — in — many.		
(6) Writ	te a paragraph of about five sentences using the following guid	ding elements: 10	
	"A review about your favorite story"		
	characters - great - setting - ending - moral	***************************************	

60	***************************************	***************************************	

TAPE SCRIPTS

Exam (1)

The Ancient Egyptians loved onimals and kept many as pets. They adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. Farmers needed cats to kill the mice and rats. As well as cats, many people kept monkeys and babaons. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions which were dangerous and difficult to look after. Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and ibis.

Exam (2)

My name is Dina. I am writing a review of Goha's stories. This story is about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is in the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters—the man and his son—take turns riding the donkey because it is a long journey. It is really a funny story.

Exam (3)

I love playing all kinds of games. I play games outside with my friends. And at school, we usually play hopscatch and board games. I also enjoy playing board games with my sister, although she often beats me! My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend.

Exam (4)

Many water birds migrate to Egypt. You can see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos. Many birds migrate to find a warm weather.

Exam (5)

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. I got my first skateboard when I was seven. I liked it.

Exam (6)

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before, iron, they worked with copper and bronze. Some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt.



Exam (7)

My friend Osama and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. Osama was a bit scared and didn't want to enter the house.

Exam (8)

One night, king Midas was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and warm bed. In the morning, the goat felt much better. The goat thanked the king.

Exam (9)

My name is Amira and I live in Alexandria. I live on the coast. I enjoy sailing my boat. There are many interesting things to do and see. I was sailing when I saw something strange in the water. I found a message in a bottle. I was really surprised when I read it because it was very old.

Exam (10)

The images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new games console, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult, but I think they can be fun, too. Video games can be a problem when you play them too much.

Exam (11)

People who go bird watching in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too close to the birds, because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs. Wildlife watching is ideal for people who respect nature, and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

